

# **SANbox 5200 Series Fibre Channel Switch**

# **Installation Guide**

Firmware Version 5.0

Information furnished in this manual is believed to be accurate and reliable. However, QLogic Corporation assumes no responsibility for its use, nor for any infringements of patents or other rights of third parties which may result from its use. QLogic Corporation reserves the right to change product specifications at any time without notice. Applications described in this document for any of these products are for illustrative purposes only. QLogic Corporation makes no representation nor warranty that such applications are suitable for the specified use without further testing or modification. QLogic Corporation assumes no responsibility for any errors that may appear in this document.

This SANbox switch is covered by one or more of the following patents: 6697359; other patents pending.

QLogic, SANbox, SANblade, SANsurfer, SANsurfer Switch Manager, SANsurfer Management Suite, and Multistage are trademarks or registered trademarks of QLogic Corporation.

General Devices is trademark of General Devices Company, Inc.

Gnome is a trademark of the GNOME Foundation Corporation.

Java and Solaris are registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc.

Linux is a registered trademark of Linus Torvalds.

Mac OS X and Safari are registered trademarks of Apple Computer, Inc.

Microsoft, Windows XP, and Windows 2000/2003, and Internet Explorer are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

Motorola is a registered trademark of Motorola, Inc.

Netscape Navigator and Mozilla are trademarks or registered trademarks of Netscape Communications Corporation.

Red Hat is a registered trademark of Red Hat Software Inc.

S.u.S.E is a trademark of SUSE LINUX AG.

All other brand and product names are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners.

Document Revision History	
Release, Revision A, February 2005Firmware Version 5.0Update, Revision B, April 2006SANsurfer Switch Manager Version 5.00Update, Revision C, December 22, 2006SANsurfer Switch Manager Version 5.00	
Description	Affected Sections
Update logos and page formats	All
Update Contact Information	1.14.3

© 2000–2006 QLogic Corporation All Rights Reserved Worldwide. First Published: May 2001

QLogic Corporation, 26650 Aliso Viejo Parkway, Aliso Viejo, CA 92656, (800) 662-4471 or (949) 389-6000

# **Table of Contents**

Section 1	Introduction			
1.1	Intended Audience	1-1		
1.2	Related Materials			
1.3	New in this Release			
1.4	Safety Notices			
1.5	Sicherheitshinweise	1-3		
1.6	Notes informatives relatives à la sécurité	1-3		
1.7	Communications Statements	1-4		
1.7.1	Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Class A Statement	1-4		
1.7.2	Canadian Department of Communications Class A			
	Compliance Statement	1-4		
1.7.3	Avis de conformité aux normes du ministère des			
	Communications du Canada	1-5		
1.7.4	CE Statement	1-5		
1.7.5	VCCI Class A Statement	1-6		
1.7.6	MIC Class A Statement (model 5200 only)	1-6		
1.8	Laser Safety Information	1-6		
1.9	Electrostatic Discharge Sensitivity (ESDS) Precautions	1-7		
1.10	Accessible Parts	1-7		
1.11	Pièces Accessibles.			
1.12	Zugängliche Teile			
1.13	General Public License	1-8		
1.13.1	Preamble	1-8		
1.13.2	Terms And Conditions For Copying, Distribution And Modification	1-9		
1.13.3	How to Apply These Terms to Your New Programs	1-13		
1.14	Technical Support	1-15		
1.14.1	Availability	1-15		
1.14.2	Training	1-15		
1.14.3	Contact Information 1-			

### Section 2 General Description

2.1	Chassis Controls and LEDs	2-2		
2.1.1	Maintenance Button			
2.1.1.1	Resetting a Switch			
2.1.1.2	Placing the Switch in Maintenance Mode			
2.1.2	Chassis LEDs	2-4		
2.1.2.1	Input Power LED (Green)	2-4		
2.1.2.2	Heartbeat LED (Green)	2-4		
2.1.2.3	System Fault LED (Amber)	2-5		
2.2	Fibre Channel Ports	2-5		
2.2.1	Port LEDs	2-6		
2.2.1.1	Port Logged-In LED (Green)	2-6		
2.2.1.2	Port Activity LED (Green)	2-6		
2.2.2	Transceivers	2-7		
2.2.3	Port Types	2-7		
2.3	Ethernet Port	2-8		
2.4	Serial Port	2-9		
2.5	Power Supplies and Fans	2-10		
2.6	Switch Management	2-11		
2.6.1	SANsurfer Switch Manager	2-11		
2.6.2	SANsurfer Switch Manager Web Applet			
2.6.3	Command Line Interface	2-12		
2.6.4	SANsurfer Switch Manager Application Programming Interface	2-12		
2.6.5	Simple Network Management Protocol	2-12		
2.6.6	File Transfer Protocol	2-12		
Section 3	Planning			
3.1	Devices.	3-1		
3.2	Device Access	3-2		
3.2.1	Soft Zones	3-3		
3.2.2	Access Control List Hard Zones	3-3		
3.3	Performance	3-4		
3.3.1	Distance.	3-4		
3.3.2	Bandwidth	3-5		
3.3.3	Latency			
3.4	Feature Licensing	3-6		

3.5	Multiple Chassis Fabrics	3-6		
3.5.1	Optimizing Device Performance			
3.5.2	Domain ID, Principal Priority, and Domain ID Lock			
3.5.3	Stacking			
3.5.4	Common Topologies	3-10		
3.5.4.1	Cascade Topology	3-10		
3.5.4.2	Mesh Topology	3-11		
3.5.4.3	Multistage Topology	3-12		
3.6	Switch Services	3-13		
3.7	Fabric Security	3-14		
3.7.1	Connection Security	3-15		
3.7.2	Device Security	3-16		
3.7.2.1	Security Example: Switches and HBAs	3-17		
3.7.2.2	Security Example: RADIUS Server	3-20		
3.7.2.3	Security Example: Host Authentication	3-24		
3.7.3	User Account Security	3-26		
3.8	Fabric Management	3-27		
Section 4	Installation			
4.1	Site Requirements	4-1		
4.1.1	Fabric Management Workstation	4-1		
4.1.2	Switch Power Requirements	4-2		
4.1.3	Environmental Conditions	4-2		
4.2	Installing a Switch	4-2		
4.2.1	Mount the Switch	4-3		
4.2.2	Install Transceivers	4-6		
4.2.3	Connect the Workstation to the Switch	4-8		
4.2.4	Configure the Workstation	4-9		
4.2.4.1	Setting the Workstation IP Address for Ethernet Connections	4-9		
4.2.4.2	Configuring the Workstation Serial Port	4-10		
4.2.5	Install the Management Application.	4-11		
4.2.5.1	SANsurfer Switch Manager	4-11		
4.2.5.2	SANsurfer Management Suite	4-13		
4.2.6	Start SANsurfer Switch Manager	4-18		
4.2.7	Connect the Switch to AC Power	4-20		
4.2.8	Configure the Switch	4-23		
4.2.9	Cable Devices to the Switch	4-25		
4.3	Install Firmware	4-25		
4.3.1	Using SANsurfer Switch Manager to Install Firmware	4-26		
4.3.2	Using the CLI to Install Firmware	4-27		

4.4	Upgrading the SANbox 5200 Series Switch 4-		
Section 5	Diagnostics/Troubleshooting		
5.1	Chassis Diagnostics		
5.1.1	Input Power LED Is Extinguished		
5.1.2	System Fault LED Is Illuminated	5-2	
5.2	Power-On Self Test Diagnostics	5-3	
5.2.1	Heartbeat LED Blink Patterns	5-3	
5.2.1.1	Internal Firmware Failure Blink Pattern	5-4	
5.2.1.2	System Error Blink Pattern	5-4	
5.2.1.3	Configuration File System Error Blink Pattern	5-4	
5.2.1.4	Over Temperature Blink Pattern	5-6	
5.2.2	Logged-In LED Indications	5-7	
5.2.2.1	E_Port Isolation	5-8	
5.2.2.2	Excessive Port Errors	5-9	
5.3	Power Supply Diagnostics	5-11	
5.4	Recovering a Switch	5-12	
5.4.1	Maintenance – Exit	5-13	
5.4.2	Maintenance – Image Unpack	5-13	
5.4.3	Maintenance – Reset Network Config	5-14	
5.4.4	Maintenance – Reset User Accounts to Default       5         Maintenance – Copy Log Files       5		
5.4.5			
5.4.6	Maintenance – Remove Switch Config	5-14	
5.4.7	Maintenance – Remake Filesystem	5-14	
5.4.8	Maintenance – Reset Switch	5-15	
5.4.9	Maintenance – Update Boot Loader 5		
Section 6 Removal/Replacement			
6.1	6.1 SFP Transceiver Removal and Replacement		
6.2	Power Supply Removal and Replacement.	6-2	
Appendix A	Specifications		
A.1	Fabric Specifications	A-1	
A.2	Maintainability.		
A.3	Fabric Management	A-3	
A.4	Dimensions	A-3	
A.5	Electrical	A-4	
A.6	Environmental	A-4	
A.7	Regulatory Certifications A		



### Appendix B Command Line Interface

B.1	Logging On to a Switch	B-1
B.2	User Accounts	B-2
B.3	Working with Switch Configurations	B-2
B.3.1	Modifying a Configuration	B-3
B.3.2	Backing up and Restoring Switch Configurations	B-4
B.4	Commands	B-6
	Admin Command	B-8
	Alias Command	B-9
	CIM Command	B-11
	CIMListener Command	B-12
	CIMSubscription Command	B-14
	Config Command	B-16
	Create Command	B-19
	Date Command	B-22
	Feature Command	B-23
	Firmware Install Command	B-24
	Group Command	B-25
	Hardreset Command	B-33
	Help Command	B-34
	History Command	B-35
	Hotreset Command	B-36
	Image Command	B-37
	Lip Command	B-40
	Passwd Command	B-41
	Ping Command	B-42
	Ps Command	B-43
	Quit Command	B-44
	Reset Command	B-45
	Security Command	B-53
	Securityset Command	B-57
	Set Command	B-59
	Set Config Command	B-61
	Set Log Command	B-74
	Set Port Command	B-78
	Set Setup Command	B-80
	Show Command	B-90
	Show Config Command	B-105
	Show Log Command	B-109



Show Perf Command	B-112
Show Setup Command	B-115
Shutdown Command	B-119
Test Command	B-120
Uptime Command	B-123
User Command	B-124
Whoami Command	B-127
Zone Command	B-128
Zoneset Command	B-132
Zoning Command	B-134

# Glossary

Index



# Figures

Figure		Page
2-1	SANbox 5200 Series Fibre Channel Switch	2-1
2-2	Chassis Controls and LEDS.	2-2
2-3	Chassis LEDs.	2-4
2-4	Fibre Channel Ports	2-5
2-5	Port LEDs.	2-6
2-6	Ethernet Port	2-8
2-7	Serial Port and Pin Identification	2-9
2-8	Model 5202 Switch Power Supplies.	2-10
3-1	Two-Switch Stack.	3-8
3-2	Three-Switch Stack	3-8
3-3	Four-Switch Stack	3-9
3-4	Cascade-with-a-Loop Topology	3-10
3-5	Mesh Topology	3-11
3-6	Multistage Topology	3-12
3-7	Security Example: Switches and HBAs	3-17
3-8	Security Example: RADIUS Server	3-20
3-9	Security Example: Management Server	3-24
4-1	SANbox 5200 Series Fibre Channel Switch.	4-2
4-2	Mounting the Model 5200 Switch in a Rack without Rails	4-5
4-3	Mounting the Model 5200 Switch in a Rack with a Rail Kit	4-6
4-4	Removing 10-Gbps Port Covers	4-7
4-5	Installing XPAK Switch Stacking Cables	4-7
4-6	Workstation Cable Connections	4-8
5-1	Chassis LEDs.	5-1
5-2	Logged-In LED	5-7
5-3	Model 5202 Switch Power Supply LEDs	5-11
6-1	Power Supply Removal	6-3
6-2	Power Supply Installation.	6-3

### Tables

Table		Page
2-1	Serial Port Pin Identification	2-9
3-1	Zoning Database Limits	3-2
3-2	Port-to-Port Latency	3-5
4-1	Management Workstation Requirements	4-1
B-1	Command-Line Completion	B-6
B-2	Commands Listed by Authority Level	B-7
B-3	CIM Listener Configuration Parameters	B-12
B-4	CIM Subscription Configuration Parameters	B-14
B-5	ISL Group Member Attributes	B-26
B-6	Port Group Member Attributes	B-27
B-7	MS Group Member Attributes	B-28
B-8	Group Member Attributes	B-29
B-9	Switch Configuration Defaults	B-47
B-10	Port Configuration Defaults	B-48
B-11	Port Threshold Alarm Configuration Defaults.	B-49
B-12	Zoning Configuration Defaults	B-49
B-13	SNMP Configuration Defaults	B-50
B-14	RADIUS Configuration Defaults	B-50
B-15	Services Configuration Defaults.	B-51
B-16	System Configuration Defaults.	B-51
B-17	Security Configuration Defaults	B-52
B-18	Set Config Port Parameters	B-61
B-19	Security Configuration Parameters	B-64
B-20	Set Config Switch Parameters	B-65
B-21	Set Config Threshold Parameters	B-67
B-22	Set Config Zoning Parameters.	B-68
B-23	RADIUS Service Settings.	B-80
B-24	Switch Services Settings	B-82
B-25	SNMP Configuration Settings	B-84
B-26	System Configuration Settings	B-85
B-27	Show Port Parameters	B-93
B-28	Switch Operational Parameters	B-96
B-29	Zoning Database Limits	B-135

# Section 1 Introduction

This manual describes the features and installation of the SANbox® 5200 Fibre Channel switch, firmware version 5.0. This includes the model 5200 switch and the model 5202 switch with dual replaceable power supplies. This manual is organized as follows:

- Section 1 describes the intended audience, related materials, safety notices, communications statements, laser safety information, electrostatic discharge sensitivity precautions, accessible parts, general program license, and technical support.
- Section 2 is an overview of the switch. It describes indicator LEDs and all user controls and connections.
- Section 3 describes the factors to consider when planning a fabric.
- Section 4 explains how to install and configure the switch.
- Section 5 describes the diagnostic methods and troubleshooting procedures.
- Section 6 describes the removal and replacement of field replaceable units. This includes media transceivers for both models and power supplies for model 5202 switches.
- Appendix A lists the switch specifications.
- Appendix B describes the Telnet command line interface.

Please read the communications statements and laser safety information later in this section. Use this manual with the SANbox 5200 Series Switch Management User's Guide.

#### <sup>1.1</sup> Intended Audience

This manual introduces users to the switch and explains its installation and service. It is intended for users who are responsible for installing and servicing network equipment.

#### <sup>1.2</sup> Related Materials

The following manuals and materials are referenced in the text and/or provide additional information.

- SANbox 5200 Series Switch Management User's Guide, publication number 59056-03.
- QLogic Switch Interoperability Guide v3.0. This PDF document can be downloaded at http://www.qlogic.com/interopguide/info.asp#inter.
- Fibre Channel-Arbitrated Loop (FC-AL-2) Rev. 6.8.
- Fibre Channel-10-bit Interface Rev. 2.3.
- Definitions of Managed Objects for the Fabric Element in Fibre Channel Standard (draft-ietf-ipfc-fabric-element-mib-04.txt).

The Fibre Channel Standards are available from:

Global Engineering Documents, 15 Inverness Way East, Englewood, CO 80112-5776 Phone: (800) 854-7179 or (303) 397-7956 Fax: (303) 397-2740.

#### <sup>1.3</sup> New in this Release

The following items are new in the current firmware release:

- Support for FC-SP device security for authorization and authentication.
- Support for centralized device and user authentication on a Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service (RADIUS) server.
- Support for secure workstation connections to the switch using the Secure Shell (SSH) protocol for the Telnet command line interface and the Secure Socket Layer protocol for management applications such as SANsurfer Switch Manager.
- Support for transmission of service indications to Common Information Module (CIM) clients through the configuration of listeners and subscriptions.
- Support for centralized control of switch services: Telnet, Secure Shell (SSH) connections, SANsurfer Switch Manager, Secure Socket Layer (SSL) connections, Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP), Network Time Protocol (NTP), File Transfer Protocol (FTP), Common Information Module (CIM), and management server.
- Maximum number of zones is increased to 2000.
- Time zone can be set to synchronize the switch and workstation.
- Support for SANsurfer Switch Manager on MacIntosh and S.u.S.E Linux operating systems.



# <sup>1.4</sup> Safety Notices

A **Warning** notice indicates the presence of a hazard that has the potential of causing personal injury.

4-4, 4-20, 6-1

A **Caution** notice indicates the presence of a hazard that has the potential of causing damage to the equipment.

4-4, 5-14, 6-2

#### 1.5 Sicherheitshinweise

Ein **Warnhinweis** weist auf das Vorhandensein einer Gefahr hin, die möglicherweise Verletzungen zur Folge hat.

4-4, 4-21, 6-1

Ein **Vorsichtshinweis** weist auf das Vorhandensein einer Gefahr hin, die möglicherweise Geräteschäden zur Folge hat.

4-4, 5-14, 6-2

1.6

### Notes informatives relatives à la sécurité

Une note informative **Avertissement** indique la présence d'un risque pouvant entraîner des blessures.

4-4, 4-20, 6-1

Une note informative **Attention** indique la présence d'un risque pouvant entraîner des dégâts matériels.

4-4, 5-14, 6-2

#### 1.7 Communications Statements

The following statements apply to this product. The statements for other products intended for use with this product appear in their accompanying manuals.

#### 1.7.1

# Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Class A Statement

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy, and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area may cause unacceptable interference, in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at their own expense.

Neither the provider nor the manufacturer is responsible for any radio or television interference caused by unauthorized changes or modifications to this equipment. Unauthorized changes or modifications could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

#### <sup>1.7.2</sup> Canadian Department of Communications Class A Compliance Statement

This equipment does not exceed Class A limits for radio emissions for digital apparatus, set out in Radio Interference Regulation of the Canadian Department of Communications. Operation in a residential area may cause unacceptable interference to radio and TV reception requiring the owner or operator to take whatever steps necessary to correct the interference.



# Avis de conformité aux normes du ministère des Communications du Canada

Cet équipement ne dépasse pas les limites de Classe A d'émission de bruits radioélectriques por les appareils numériques, telles que prescrites par le Réglement sur le brouillage radioélectrique établi par le ministère des Communications du Canada. L'exploitation faite en milieu résidentiel peut entraîner le brouillage des réceptions radio et télé, ce qui obligerait le propriétaire ou l'opérateur à prendre les dispositions nécwssaires pour en éliminer les causes.

#### 1.7.4 CE Statement

The CE symbol on the equipment indicates that this system complies with the EMC (Electromagnetic Compatibility) directive of the European Community (89/336/EEC) and to the Low Voltage (Safety) Directive (73/23/EEC). Such marking indicates that this system meets or exceeds the following technical standards:

- EN60950:2000 "Safety of Information Technology Equipment".
- EN60825-1/A2:2001 "Safety of Laser Products, Part 1".
- EN55022:1998 "Limits and Methods of Measurement of Radio Interference Characteristics of Information Technology Equipment".
- EN55024-1:1998 "Electromagnetic compatibility Generic immunity standard Part 1: Residential commercial, and light industry."
  - IEC1000-4-2:1995 "Electrostatic Discharge Immunity Test"
  - IEC1000-4-3:1995 "Radiated, Radio-Frequency, Electromagnetic Field Immunity Test"
  - IEC1000-4-4:1995 "Electrical Fast Transient/Burst Immunity Test"
  - IEC1000-4-5:1995 "Surge Immunity Test"
  - IEC1000-4-6:1996 "Immunity To Conducted Disturbances, Induced By Radio-Frequency Fields"
  - IEC1000-4-8:1993 "Power Frequency Magnetic Field Immunity Test"
  - IEC1000-4-11:1994 "Voltage Dips, Short Interruptions And Voltage Variations Immunity Tests"
- EN61000-3-2:1995 "Limits For Harmonic Current Emissions (Equipment Input Current Less Than/Equal To 16 A Per Phase)" Class A
- EN61000-3-3:1995 "Limitation Of Voltage Fluctuations And Flicker In Low-Voltage Supply Systems For Equipment With Rated Current Less Than Or Equal To 16 A"

#### 1.7.5 VCCI Class A Statement

この装置は、情報処理装置等電波障害自主規制協議会(VCCI)の基準 に基づくクラスA情報技術装置です。この装置を家庭環境で使用すると電波 妨害を引き起こすことがあります。この場合には使用者が適切な対策を講ず るよう要求されることがあります。

This is a Class A product based on the standard of the Voluntary Control Council For Interference by Information Technology Equipment (VCCI). If this equipment is used in a domestic environment, radio disturbance may arise. When such trouble occurs, the user may be required to take corrective actions.

### <sup>1.7.6</sup> MIC Class A Statement (model 5200 only)

A급 기기 (업무용 정보통신기기)

이 기기는 업무용으로 전자파적합등록을 한 기기이오니 판매자 또는 사용자는 이 점을 주의하시기 바라며, 만약 잘못판매 또는 구입하였을 때에는 가정용으로 교환하시기 바랍니다.

As this equipment has undergone EMC registration for business purpose, the seller and/or the buyer is asked to beware of this point and in case a wrongful sale or purchase has been made, it is asked that a change to household use be made.

#### 1.8 Laser Safety Information

This product uses Class 1 laser optical transceivers to communicate over the fiber optic conductors. The U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (DHHS) does not consider Class 1 lasers to be hazardous. The International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) 825 Laser Safety Standard requires labeling in English, German, Finnish, and French stating that the product uses Class 1 lasers. Because it is impractical to label the transceivers, the following label is provided in this manual.

CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT LASER KLASSE 1 LUOKAN 1 LASERLAITE APPAREIL A LASER DE CLASSE 1 TO IEC 825 (1984) + CENELEC HD 482 S1 The following warning applies to XPAK optical transceivers:

WARNING!! LASER RADIATION DO NOT VIEW DIRECTLY WITH OPTICAL INSTRUMENTS CLASS 1M LASER PRODUCT

# <sup>1.9</sup> Electrostatic Discharge Sensitivity (ESDS) Precautions

The assemblies used in the switch chassis are ESD sensitive. Observe ESD handling procedures when handling any assembly used in the switch chassis.

# Accessible Parts

The Field Replaceable Units (FRUs) for the SANbox 5200 Series switch are the following:

- Power supplies (5202)
- Small Form-Factor Pluggable (SFP) optical transceivers
- XPAK optical transceivers

#### <sup>1.11</sup> **Pièces Accessibles**

Les pièces remplaçables, Field Replaceable Units (FRU), du commutateur SANbox 5200 Series Fibre Channel Switch sont les suivantes:

- Alimentations de courant (5202)
- Interfaces aux media d'interconnexion appelés SFP transceivers.
- Interfaces aux media d'interconnexion appelés XPAK transceivers.

#### <sup>1.12</sup> Zugängliche Teile

Nur die folgenden Teile im SANbox 5200 Series Fibre Channel Switch können kundenseitig ersetzt werden:

- Netzteile (5202)
- Schnittstellen f
  ür die Zwischenverbindungstr
  äger, SFP transceivers genannt.
- Schnittstellen f
  ür die Zwischenverbindungstr
  äger, XPAK transceivers genannt.

# General Public License

QLogic® Fibre Channel switches are powered by the Linux operating system. A machine-readable copy of the Linux source code is available upon written request to the following address. A nominal fee will be charged for reproduction, shipping, and handling costs in accordance with the General Public License.

QLogic Corporation 6321 Bury Drive Eden Prairie, MN 55346-1739 Attention: Technical Support - Source Request

Warning: Installation of software or files not authorized by QLogic will immediately and irrevocably void all warranty and service contracts on the affected units.

The following general public license has been reproduced with permission from:

GNU General Public License Version 2, June 1991 Copyright (C) 1989, 1991 Free Software Foundation, Inc. 59 Temple Place - Suite 330, Boston, MA 02111-1307, USA

#### <sup>1.13.1</sup> **Preamble**

The licenses for most software are designed to take away your freedom to share and change it. By contrast, the GNU General Public License is intended to guarantee your freedom to share and change free software--to make sure the software is free for all its users. This General Public License applies to most of the Free Software Foundation's software and to any other program whose authors commit to using it. (Some other Free Software Foundation software is covered by the GNU Library General Public License instead.) You can apply it to your programs, too.

When we speak of free software, we are referring to freedom, not price. Our General Public Licenses are designed to make sure that you have the freedom to distribute copies of free software (and charge for this service if you wish), that you receive source code or can get it if you want it, that you can change the software or use pieces of it in new free programs; and that you know you can do these things.

To protect your rights, we need to make restrictions that forbid anyone to deny you these rights or to ask you to surrender the rights. These restrictions translate to certain responsibilities for you if you distribute copies of the software, or if you modify it.

For example, if you distribute copies of such a program, whether gratis or for a fee, you must give the recipients all the rights that you have. You must make sure that they, too, receive or can get the source code. And you must show them these terms so they know their rights.

We protect your rights with two steps: (1) copyright the software, and (2) offer you this license which gives you legal permission to copy, distribute and/or modify the software.

Also, for each author's protection and ours, we want to make certain that everyone understands that there is no warranty for this free software. If the software is modified by someone else and passed on, we want its recipients to know that what they have is not the original, so that any problems introduced by others will not reflect on the original authors' reputations.

Finally, any free program is threatened constantly by software patents. We wish to avoid the danger that redistributors of a free program will individually obtain patent licenses, in effect making the program proprietary. To prevent this, we have made it clear that any patent must be licensed for everyone's free use or not licensed at all.

The precise terms and conditions for copying, distribution and modification follow.

# <sup>1.13.2</sup> Terms And Conditions For Copying, Distribution And Modification

1. This License applies to any program or other work which contains a notice placed by the copyright holder saying it may be distributed under the terms of this General Public License. The "Program", below, refers to any such program or work, and a "work based on the Program" means either the Program or any derivative work under copyright law: that is to say, a work containing the Program or a portion of it, either verbatim or with modifications and/or translated into another language. (Hereinafter, translation is included without limitation in the term "modification".) Each licensee is addressed as "you".

Activities other than copying, distribution and modification are not covered by this License; they are outside its scope. The act of running the Program is not restricted, and the output from the Program is covered only if its contents constitute a work based on the Program (independent of having been made by running the Program). Whether that is true depends on what the Program does.

2. You may copy and distribute verbatim copies of the Program's source code as you receive it, in any medium, provided that you conspicuously and appropriately publish on each copy an appropriate copyright notice and disclaimer of warranty; keep intact all the notices that refer to this License and to the absence of any warranty; and give any other recipients of the Program a copy of this License along with the Program.

You may charge a fee for the physical act of transferring a copy, and you may at your option offer warranty protection in exchange for a fee.

3. You may modify your copy or copies of the Program or any portion of it, thus forming a work based on the Program, and copy and distribute such

modifications or work under the terms of Section 1 above, provided that you also meet all of these conditions:

- a. You must cause the modified files to carry prominent notices stating that you changed the files and the date of any change.
- b. You must cause any work that you distribute or publish, that in whole or in part contains or is derived from the Program or any part thereof, to be licensed as a whole at no charge to all third parties under the terms of this License.
- c. If the modified program normally reads commands interactively when run, you must cause it, when started running for such interactive use in the most ordinary way, to print or display an announcement including an appropriate copyright notice and a notice that there is no warranty (or else, saying that you provide a warranty) and that users may redistribute the program under these conditions, and telling the user how to view a copy of this License. (Exception: if the Program itself is interactive but does not normally print such an announcement, your work based on the Program is not required to print an announcement.)

These requirements apply to the modified work as a whole. If identifiable sections of that work are not derived from the Program, and can be reasonably considered independent and separate works in themselves, then this License, and its terms, do not apply to those sections when you distribute them as separate works. But when you distribute the same sections as part of a whole which is a work based on the Program, the distribution of the whole must be on the terms of this License, whose permissions for other licensees extend to the entire whole, and thus to each and every part regardless of who wrote it.

Thus, it is not the intent of this section to claim rights or contest your rights to work written entirely by you; rather, the intent is to exercise the right to control the distribution of derivative or collective works based on the Program.

In addition, mere aggregation of another work not based on the Program with the Program (or with a work based on the Program) on a volume of a storage or distribution medium does not bring the other work under the scope of this License.

- 4. You may copy and distribute the Program (or a work based on it, under Section 2) in object code or executable form under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above provided that you also do one of the following:
  - a. Accompany it with the complete corresponding machine-readable source code, which must be distributed under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above on a medium customarily used for software interchange; or,

- b. Accompany it with a written offer, valid for at least three years, to give any third party, for a charge no more than your cost of physically performing source distribution, a complete machine-readable copy of the corresponding source code, to be distributed under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above on a medium customarily used for software interchange; or,
- c. Accompany it with the information you received as to the offer to distribute corresponding source code. (This alternative is allowed only for noncommercial distribution and only if you received the program in object code or executable form with such an offer, in accord with Subsection b above.)

The source code for a work means the preferred form of the work for making modifications to it. For an executable work, complete source code means all the source code for all modules it contains, plus any associated interface definition files, plus the scripts used to control compilation and installation of the executable. However, as a special exception, the source code distributed need not include anything that is normally distributed (in either source or binary form) with the major components (compiler, kernel, and so on) of the operating system on which the executable runs, unless that component itself accompanies the executable.

If distribution of executable or object code is made by offering access to copy from a designated place, then offering equivalent access to copy the source code from the same place counts as distribution of the source code, even though third parties are not compelled to copy the source along with the object code.

- 5. You may not copy, modify, sublicense, or distribute the Program except as expressly provided under this License. Any attempt otherwise to copy, modify, sublicense or distribute the Program is void, and will automatically terminate your rights under this License. However, parties who have received copies, or rights, from you under this License will not have their licenses terminated so long as such parties remain in full compliance.
- 6. You are not required to accept this License, since you have not signed it. However, nothing else grants you permission to modify or distribute the Program or its derivative works. These actions are prohibited by law if you do not accept this License. Therefore, by modifying or distributing the Program (or any work based on the Program), you indicate your acceptance of this License to do so, and all its terms and conditions for copying, distributing or modifying the Program or works based on it.
- 7. Each time you redistribute the Program (or any work based on the Program), the recipient automatically receives a license from the original licensor to copy, distribute or modify the Program subject to these terms and conditions. You may not impose any further restrictions on the recipients' exercise of the

rights granted herein. You are not responsible for enforcing compliance by third parties to this License.

8. If, as a consequence of a court judgment or allegation of patent infringement or for any other reason (not limited to patent issues), conditions are imposed on you (whether by court order, agreement or otherwise) that contradict the conditions of this License, they do not excuse you from the conditions of this License. If you cannot distribute so as to satisfy simultaneously your obligations under this License and any other pertinent obligations, then as a consequence you may not distribute the Program at all. For example, if a patent license would not permit royalty-free redistribution of the Program by all those who receive copies directly or indirectly through you, then the only way you could satisfy both it and this License would be to refrain entirely from distribution of the Program.

If any portion of this section is held invalid or unenforceable under any particular circumstance, the balance of the section is intended to apply and the section as a whole is intended to apply in other circumstances.

It is not the purpose of this section to induce you to infringe any patents or other property right claims or to contest validity of any such claims; this section has the sole purpose of protecting the integrity of the free software distribution system, which is implemented by public license practices. Many people have made generous contributions to the wide range of software distributed through that system in reliance on consistent application of that system; it is up to the author/donor to decide if he or she is willing to distribute software through any other system and a licensee cannot impose that choice.

This section is intended to make thoroughly clear what is believed to be a consequence of the rest of this License.

- 9. If the distribution and/or use of the Program is restricted in certain countries either by patents or by copyrighted interfaces, the original copyright holder who places the Program under this License may add an explicit geographical distribution limitation excluding those countries, so that distribution is permitted only in or among countries not thus excluded. In such case, this License incorporates the limitation as if written in the body of this License.
- 10. The Free Software Foundation may publish revised and/or new versions of the General Public License from time to time. Such new versions will be similar in spirit to the present version, but may differ in detail to address new problems or concerns.
- 11. Each version is given a distinguishing version number. If the Program specifies a version number of this License which applies to it and "any later version", you have the option of following the terms and conditions either of that version or of any later version published by the Free Software Foundation. If the Program does not specify a version number of this

License, you may choose any version ever published by the Free Software Foundation.

12. If you wish to incorporate parts of the Program into other free programs whose distribution conditions are different, write to the author to ask for permission. For software which is copyrighted by the Free Software Foundation, write to the Free Software Foundation; we sometimes make exceptions for this. Our decision will be guided by the two goals of preserving the free status of all derivatives of our free software and of promoting the sharing and reuse of software generally.

#### **NO WARRANTY**

- 13. BECAUSE THE PROGRAM IS LICENSED FREE OF CHARGE, THERE IS NO WARRANTY FOR THE PROGRAM, TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW. EXCEPT WHEN OTHERWISE STATED IN WRITING THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND/OR OTHER PARTIES PROVIDE THE PROGRAM "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE OF THE PROGRAM IS WITH YOU. SHOULD THE PROGRAM PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION.
- 14. IN NO EVENT UNLESS REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW OR AGREED TO IN WRITING WILL ANY COPYRIGHT HOLDER, OR ANY OTHER PARTY WHO MAY MODIFY AND/OR REDISTRIBUTE THE PROGRAM AS PERMITTED ABOVE, BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY GENERAL, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE PROGRAM (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO LOSS OF DATA OR DATA BEING RENDERED INACCURATE OR LOSSES SUSTAINED BY YOU OR THIRD PARTIES OR A FAILURE OF THE PROGRAM TO OPERATE WITH ANY OTHER PROGRAMS), EVEN IF SUCH HOLDER OR OTHER PARTY HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

#### END OF TERMS AND CONDITIONS

#### 1.13.3

# How to Apply These Terms to Your New Programs

If you develop a new program, and you want it to be of the greatest possible use to the public, the best way to achieve this is to make it free software which everyone can redistribute and change under these terms.

To do so, attach the following notices to the program. It is safest to attach them to the start of each source file to most effectively convey the exclusion of warranty; and each file should have at least the "copyright" line and a pointer to where the full notice is found.

one line to give the program's name and an idea of what it does.

Copyright (C) yyyy name of author

This program is free software; you can redistribute it and/or modify it under the terms of the GNU General Public License as published by the Free Software Foundation; either version 2 of the License, or (at your option) any later version.

This program is distributed in the hope that it will be useful, but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the GNU General Public License for more details.

You should have received a copy of the GNU General Public License along with this program; if not, write to the Free Software Foundation, Inc., 59 Temple Place - Suite 330, Boston, MA 02111-1307, USA.

Also add information on how to contact you by electronic and paper mail.

If the program is interactive, make it output a short notice like this when it starts in an interactive mode:

Gnomovision version 69, Copyright (C) year name of author

Gnomovision comes with ABSOLUTELY NO WARRANTY; for details type `show w'. This is free software, and you are welcome to redistribute it under certain conditions; type `show c' for details.

The hypothetical commands `show w' and `show c' should show the appropriate parts of the General Public License. Of course, the commands you use may be called something other than `show w' and `show c'; they could even be mouse-clicks or menu items--whatever suits your program.

You should also get your employer (if you work as a programmer) or your school, if any, to sign a "copyright disclaimer" for the program, if necessary. Here is a sample; alter the names:

Yoyodyne, Inc., hereby disclaims all copyright interest in the program 'Gnomovision' (which makes passes at compilers) written by James Hacker.

*signature of Ty Coon*, 1 April 1989 Ty Coon, President of Vice

This General Public License does not permit incorporating your program into proprietary programs. If your program is a subroutine library, you may consider it more useful to permit linking proprietary applications with the library. If this is what you want to do, use the GNU Library General Public License instead of this License.



#### 1.14 Technical Support

Customers should contact their authorized maintenance provider for technical support of their QLogic switch products. QLogic-direct customers may contact QLogic Technical Support; others will be redirected to their authorized maintenance provider.

Visit the QLogic support Web site listed in Contact Information for the latest firmware and software updates.

#### 1.14.1 Availability

QLogic Technical Support for products under warranty is available during local standard working hours excluding QLogic Observed Holidays.

#### 1.14.2 Training

QLogic offers certification training for the technical professional for both the SANblade<sup>™</sup> HBAs and the SANbox switches. From the training link at www.qlogic.com, you may choose Electronic-Based Training or schedule an intensive "hands-on" Certification course.

Technical Certification courses include installation, maintenance and troubleshooting QLogic SAN products. Upon demonstrating knowledge using live equipment, QLogic awards a certificate identifying the student as a Certified Professional. The training professionals at QLogic may be reached by email at tech.training@qlogic.com.

#### 1.14.3 Contact Information

Support Headquarters	QLogic Corporation 12984 Valley View Road Eden Prairie, MN 55344-3657 USA
QLogic Web Site	www.qlogic.com
Technical Support Web Site	support.qlogic.com
Technical Support Email	support@qlogic.com
Technical Training Email	tech.training@qlogic.com
North American Region	
Email	support@qlogic.com
Phone	+1-952-932-4040
Fax	+1 952-932-4018
Europe, Middle East, and Africa Region	
Email	emeasupport@qlogic.com
Phone Numbers by Language	+353 1 6924960 - English +353 1 6924961 - Français +353 1 6924962 - Deutsch +353 1 6924963 - Español +353 1 6924964 - Português +353 1 6924965 - Italiano
Asia Pacific Region	
Email	apacsupport@qlogic.com
Phone Numbers by Language	+63-2-885-6712 - English +63-2-885-6713 - (Mandarin) +63-2-885-6714 - (Japanese) +63-2-885-6715 - (Korean)
Latin and South America Region	
Email	calasupport@qlogic.com
Phone Numbers by Language	+52 55 5278 7016 - English +52 55 5278 7017 - Español +52 55 5278 7015 - Português

# Section 2 General Description

This section describes the features and capabilities of the SANbox 5200 Series Fibre Channel switches. This includes the model 5200 and the dual power supply model 5202 as shown in Figure 2-1. The following topics are described:

- Chassis Controls and LEDs
- Fibre Channel Ports
- Ethernet Port
- Serial Port
- Power Supplies and Fans
- Switch Management

Fabrics are managed with the SANsurfer Switch Manager<sup>™</sup> switch management application (version 5.00) and the Command Line Interface (CLI). Refer to the *SANbox 5200 Series Switch Management User's Guide* for information about using the SANsurfer Switch Manager application. Refer to Appendix B Command Line Interface for more information about the command line interface.

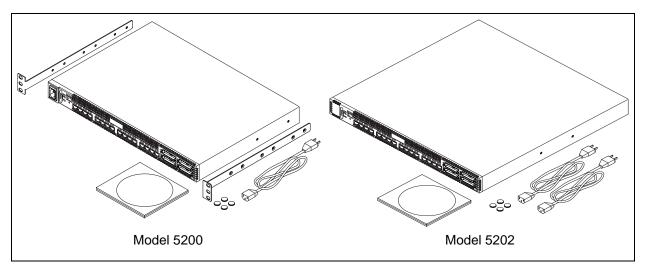


Figure 2-1. SANbox 5200 Series Fibre Channel Switch

#### <sup>2.1</sup> Chassis Controls and LEDs

The Maintenance button shown in Figure 2-2 is the only chassis control and is used to reset a switch or to recover a disabled switch. The chassis LEDs provide information about the switch's operational status. These LEDS include the Input Power LED, Heartbeat LED, and the System Fault LED. To apply power to the switch, plug the power cord into the switch AC power receptacle and into a 100–240 VAC power source.

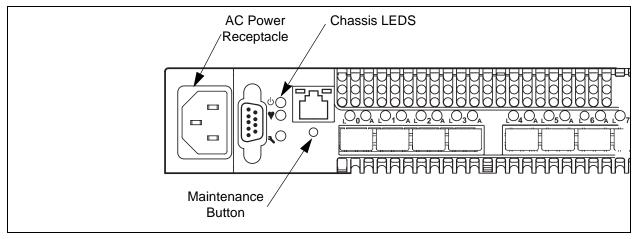


Figure 2-2. Chassis Controls and LEDS



#### 2.1.1 Maintenance Button

The Maintenance button is a dual-function momentary switch on the front panel. Its purpose is to reset the switch or to place the switch in maintenance mode. Maintenance mode sets the IP address to 10.0.0.1 and provides access to the switch for maintenance purposes when flash memory or the resident configuration file is corrupted. Refer to "Recovering a Switch" on page 5-12 for more information about using maintenance mode.

#### 2.1.1.1

### **Resetting a Switch**

To reset the switch, use a pointed tool to momentarily press and release (less than 2 seconds) the Maintenance button. The switch will respond as follows:

- 1. All the chassis LEDs will illuminate except the System Fault LED.
- 2. After approximately 1 minute, the power-on self test (POST) begins, extinguishing the Heartbeat LED.
- 3. When the POST is complete, the Input Power LED is illuminated and the Heartbeat LED is flashing once per second.

#### 2.1.1.2

### Placing the Switch in Maintenance Mode

To place the switch in maintenance mode, do the following:

- 1. Isolate the switch from the fabric.
- 2. Press and hold the Maintenance button with a pointed tool. When the Heartbeat LED alone is illuminated, release the button.
- 3. After a few seconds, the POST begins illuminating all chassis LEDs.
- 4. When the POST is complete, the chassis LEDs extinguish leaving only the Heartbeat LED illuminated. The Heartbeat LED illuminates continuously while the switch is in maintenance mode.

To exit maintenance mode and return to normal operation, momentarily press and release the Maintenance button to reset the switch.

#### 2.1.2 Chassis LEDs

The chassis LEDs provide status information about switch operation. Figure 2-3 identifies the chassis LEDS on a model 5200 switch. The model 5202 switch LED arrangement is the same. Refer to "Port LEDs" on page 2-6 for information about port LEDs.

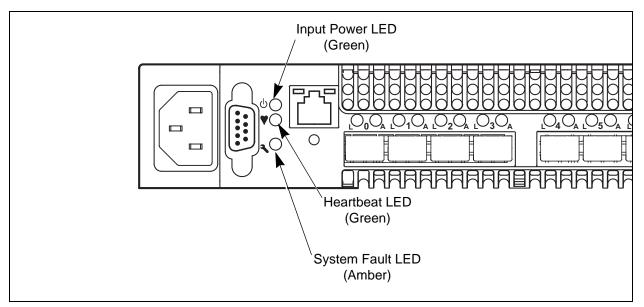


Figure 2-3. Chassis LEDs

#### 2.1.2.1 Input Power LED (Green)

The Input Power LED indicates the voltage status at the switch logic circuitry. During normal operation, this LED illuminates to indicate that the switch logic circuitry is receiving the proper DC voltages. When the switch is in maintenance mode, this LED is extinguished.

# 2.1.2.2

### Heartbeat LED (Green)

The Heartbeat LED indicates the status of the internal switch processor and the results of the POST. Following a normal power-up, the Heartbeat LED blinks about once per second to indicate that the switch passed the POST and that the internal switch processor is running. In maintenance mode, the Heartbeat LED illuminates continuously. Refer to "Heartbeat LED Blink Patterns" on page 5-3 for more information about Heartbeat LED blink patterns.



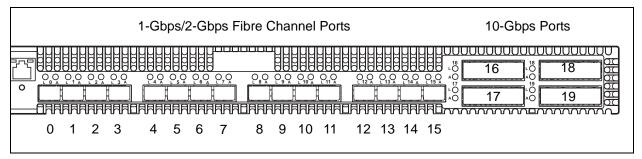
# 2.1.2.3 System Fault LED (Amber)

The System Fault LED illuminates to indicate a fault exists in the switch firmware or hardware. Fault conditions include POST errors, over temperature conditions, and power supply malfunctions. The Heartbeat LED shows a blink code for POST errors and over temperature conditions. Refer to "Heartbeat LED Blink Patterns" on page 5-3 for more information about Heartbeat LED blink patterns. On model 5202 switches, the Power Supply Fault LED indicates power supply faults. Refer to "Power Supply Diagnostics" on page 5-11 for information about power supply faults.

#### 2.2 Fibre Channel Ports

The SANbox 5200 Series switch has sixteen 1-Gbps/2-Gbps Fibre Channel ports and four 10-Gbps Fibre Channel ports. Ports are numbered 0–19 as shown in Figure 2-4. Each of the 1-Gbps/2-Gbps ports is served by a Small Form-Factor Pluggable (SFP) transceiver and is capable of 1-Gbps or 2-Gbps transmission. SFPs are hot-pluggable. User ports can self-discover both the port type and transmission speed when connected to public devices or other switches. The 1-Gbps/2-Gbps port LEDs are located above their respective ports and provide port login and activity status information.

Each 10-Gbps port is served by an XPAK optical transceiver or an XPAK switch stacking cable for connecting to other SANbox 5200 Series switches. The XPAK switch stacking cable is a passive cable and transceiver assembly that is hot-pluggable. The 10-Gbps ports come from the factory with covers that must be removed before installing transceivers or cables. 10-Gbps port LEDs are located to the left of their respective ports and provide port login and activity status information.



### Figure 2-4. Fibre Channel Ports

The SANbox 5200 Series switch comes from the factory as an 8-, 12-, 16-, or 20-port switch, enabling ports 0–7, 0–11, 0–15, or 0–19 respectively. You can upgrade the SANbox 5200 Series switch to enable additional ports up to the 20-port maximum through the purchase of a license key. Refer to "Upgrading the SANbox 5200 Series Switch" on page 4-28 for more information.

#### 2.2.1 Port LEDs

Each port has its own Logged-In LED (L) and Activity LED (A) as shown in Figure 2-5.

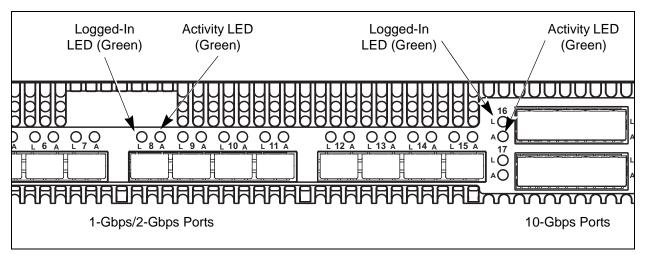


Figure 2-5. Port LEDs

#### 2.2.1.1 Port Logged-In LED (Green)

The Logged-in LED indicates the logged-in or initialization status of the connected devices. After successful completion of the POST, the switch extinguishes all Logged-In LEDs. Following a successful loop initialization or port login, the switch illuminates the corresponding logged-in LED. This shows that the port is properly connected and able to communicate with its attached devices. The Logged-In LED remains illuminated as long as the port is initialized or logged in. If the port connection is broken or an error occurs that disables the port, the Logged-In LED will flash. Refer to "Logged-In LED Indications" on page 5-7 for more information about the Logged-In LED.

#### 2.2.1.2 Dort

# Port Activity LED (Green)

The Activity LED indicates that data is passing through the port. Each frame that the port transmits or receives causes this LED to illuminate for 50 milliseconds. This makes it possible to observe the transmission of a single frame. When extending credits, the Activity LED for a donor port will reflect the traffic of the recipient port. Refer to "Distance" on page 3-4 for more information about extended credits and donor ports.



#### 2.2.2 Transceivers

The SANbox 5200 Series switch supports SFP optical transceivers for the 1-Gbps/2-Gbps ports and XPAK optical transceivers for the 10-Gbps ports. A transceiver converts electrical signals to and from optical laser signals to transmit and receive data. Duplex fiber optic cables plug into the transceivers which then connect to the devices. A 1-Gbps/2-Gbps port is capable of transmitting at 1-Gbps or 2 Gbps; however, the transceiver must also be capable of delivering at these rates.

The SFP and XPAK transceivers are hot pluggable. This means that you can remove or install a transceiver while the switch is operating without harming the switch or the transceiver. However, communication with the connected device will be interrupted. Refer to "Install Transceivers" on page 4-6 for information about installing and removing SFP and XPAK optical transceivers.

#### 2.2.3 Port Types

SANbox 5200 Series switches support generic ports (G\_Port, GL\_Port), fabric ports (F\_Port, FL\_Port), and expansion ports (E\_Port). Switches come from the factory with all 1-Gbps/2-Gbps ports configured as GL\_Ports. The 10-Gbps ports come from the factory configured as G\_Ports. Generic, fabric, and expansion ports function as follows:

- A GL\_Port self-configures as an FL\_Port when connected to a public loop device, as an F\_Port when connected to a single public device, or as an E\_Port when connected to another switch. If the device is a single device on a loop, the GL\_Port will attempt to configure first as an F\_Port, then if that fails, as an FL\_Port.
- A G\_Port self-configures as an F\_Port when connected to a single public device, or as an E\_Port when connected to another switch.
- An FL\_Port supports a loop of up to 126 public devices. An FL\_Port can also configure itself during the fabric login process as an F\_Port when connected to a single public device (N\_Port).
- An F\_Port supports a single public device.

E\_Ports enable you to expand the fabric by connecting SANbox 5200 Series switches. SANbox 5200 Series switches self-discover all inter-switch connections. Refer to "Multiple Chassis Fabrics" on page 3-6 for more information about multiple chassis fabrics. Refer to the SANbox 5200 Series Switch Management User's Guide for information about defining port types.

#### 2.3 Ethernet Port

The Ethernet port is an RJ-45 connector that provides a connection to a management workstation through a 10/100 Base-T Ethernet cable. Figure 2-6 shows the Ethernet port on a model 5200; the model 5202 is similar. A management workstation can be a Windows®, Solaris™, or a Linux® workstation that is used to configure and manage the switch fabric. You can manage the switch over an Ethernet connection using SANsurfer Switch Manager, the Command Line Interface (CLI), or SNMP. The switch through which the fabric is managed is called the fabric management switch.

The Ethernet port has two LEDs: the Link Status LED (green) and the Activity LED (green). The Link Status LED illuminates continuously when an Ethernet connection has been established. The Activity LED illuminates when data is being transmitted or received over the Ethernet connection.

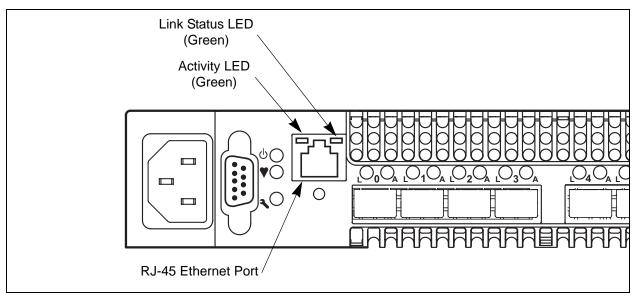
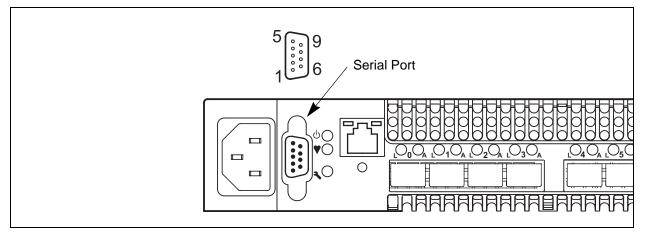


Figure 2-6. Ethernet Port

#### 2.4 Serial Port

The SANbox 5200 Series switch is equipped with an RS-232 serial port for maintenance purposes. Figure 2-7 shows the serial port on a model 5200 switch; the model 5202 is similar. You can manage the switch through the serial port using the CLI.



### Figure 2-7. Serial Port and Pin Identification

The serial port connector requires a null-modem F/F DB9 cable. The pins on the switch RS-232 connector are shown in Figure 2-7 and identified in Table 2-1. Refer to "Connect the Workstation to the Switch" on page 4-8 for information about connecting the management workstation through the serial port.

Pin Number	Description
1	Carrier Detect (DCD)
2	Receive Data (RxD)
3	Transmit Data (TxD)
4	Data Terminal Ready (DTR)
5	Signal Ground (GND)
6	Data Set Ready (DSR)
7	Request to Send (RTS)
8	Clear to Send (CTS)
9	Ring Indicator (RI)

#### Table 2-1. Serial Port Pin Identification

# 2.5 **Power Supplies and Fans**

The model 5200 switch has a single power supply that converts 100 - 240 VAC to DC voltages for the various switch circuits. Four internal fans provide cooling. The switch monitors internal air temperature, and therefore does not monitor or report fan operational status. Air flow is front-to-back. To energize the switch, plug the power cord into the switch AC receptacle and into a 100 - 240 VAC power source.

The model 5202 switch has two, hot pluggable power supplies that convert standard 100 - 240 VAC to DC voltages for the various switch circuits. Each power supply has an AC power receptacle and two status LEDs as shown in Figure 2-8:

- The Power Supply Status LED (green) illuminates to indicate that the power supply is receiving AC voltage and producing the proper DC voltages.
- The Power Supply Fault LED (amber) illuminates to indicate that a power supply fault exists and requires attention.

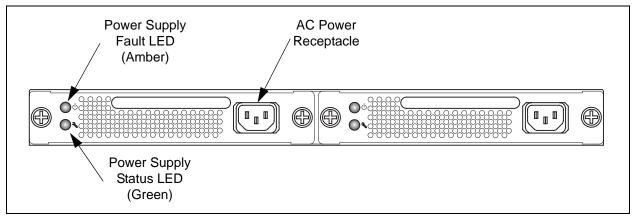


Figure 2-8. Model 5202 Switch Power Supplies

Each power supply is capable of providing all of the switch's power needs. During normal operation, each power supply provides half of the demand. If one power supply goes offline, the second power supply steps up and provides the difference.

The power supplies are hot swappable and interchangeable. Hot pluggable means that you can remove and replace one power supply while the switch is in operation without disrupting service. Refer to Section 6 Removal/Replacement for information about replacing the power supplies.

Connecting a power supply to an AC voltage source energizes the switch logic circuitry. Internal fans provide cooling. Air flow is front-to-back.

#### 2.6 Switch Management

The switch supports the following management tools:

- SANsurfer Switch Manager
- SANsurfer Switch Manager Web Applet
- Command Line Interface
- SANsurfer Switch Manager Application Programming Interface
- Simple Network Management Protocol
- File Transfer Protocol

#### 2.6.1

## SANsurfer Switch Manager

SANsurfer Switch Manager is a workstation-based Java® application that provides a graphical user interface for fabric management. This includes SANsurfer Performance Viewer which graphs port performance. SANsurfer Switch Manager can run on a Windows, Solaris, or Linux workstation. A management workstation connects to the fabric through the Ethernet port of one or more switches and can provide in-band management for all other switches in the fabric. Refer to the *SANbox 5200 Series Switch Management User's Guide* for information about the SANsurfer Switch Manager application and its use.

# 2.6.2 SANsurfer Switch Manager Web Applet

To make switch management less dependent on a particular workstation, each switch contains a SANsurfer Switch Manager web applet. One instance of the web applet can be run at a time by opening the switch IP address with an internet browser. The switch comes from the factory with the web applet enabled, but you can disable it using the EmbeddedGUIEnabled parameter of the Set Setup System command.

The applet possesses the same features as the workstation-based version with the following exceptions:

- Extended Credits wizard
- Zoning Wizard
- SANsurfer Performance Viewer
- Condensed online help

## 2.6.3 Command Line Interface

The command line interface (CLI) provides monitoring and configuration functions by which the administrator can manage the fabric and its switches. The CLI is available over an Ethernet connection or a serial connection. Refer to Appendix B Command Line Interface for more information.

## 2.6.4

# SANsurfer Switch Manager Application Programming Interface

The SANsurfer Switch Manager API enables an application provider to build a management application for QLogic switches. The library is implemented in ANSI standard C, relying only on standard POSIX run-time libraries. Contact your distributor or authorized reseller for information about the SANsurfer Switch Manager API.

### 2.6.5

## **Simple Network Management Protocol**

SNMP provides monitoring and trap functions for the fabric. SANbox firmware supports SNMP versions 1 and 2, the Fibre Alliance Management Information Base (FA-MIB) version 4.0, and the Fabric Element Management Information Base (FE-MIB) RFC 2837. Traps can be formatted using SNMP version 1 or 2. Refer to the SANbox/SANbox2 Simple Network Management Protocol Reference Guide for more information about using SNMP.

#### 2.6.6 File Transfer Protocol

FTP provides the command line interface for exchanging files between the switch and the management workstation. These files include firmware image files, configuration files, and log files. "Backing up and Restoring Switch Configurations" on page B-4 provides an example of using FTP to transfer configuration files.

# Section 3 Planning

Consider the following when planning a fabric:

- Devices
- Device Access
- Performance
- Feature Licensing
- Multiple Chassis Fabrics
- Switch Services
- Fabric Security
- Fabric Management

#### 3.1 Devices

When planning a fabric, consider the number of public devices and the anticipated demand. This will determine the number of ports that are needed and in turn the number of switches. Consider how many and what types of switches are needed.

The switch uses SFP transceivers in the 1-Gbps/2-Gbps ports, but the device host bus adapters you are using may not. Consider whether the device adapters use SFP or Gigabit Interface Converters (GBIC) transceivers, and choose fiber optic cables accordingly. Use LC-type cable connectors for SFP transceivers and SC-type cable connectors for GBIC transceivers. Also consider the transmission speed compatibility of your devices, HBAs, switches, and SFPs.

Consider the distribution of targets and initiators. An F\_Port supports a single public device. An FL\_Port can support up to 126 public devices in an arbitrated loop.

# 3.2 Device Access

Consider device access needs within the fabric. Access is controlled by the use of zones and zone sets. Some zoning strategies include the following:

- Group devices by operating system.
- Separate devices that have no need to communicate with other devices in the fabric or have classified data.
- Separate devices into department, administrative, or other functional group.
- Reserve a path and its bandwidth from one port to another.

A zone is a named group of devices that can communicate with each other. Membership in a zone can be defined by switch domain ID and port number, port Fibre Channel address, or by device worldwide name (WWN). Devices can communicate only with devices within the same zone. The SANbox 5200 Series switch supports both hard and soft zones. A zone can be a member of more than one zone set. Several zone sets can be defined for a fabric, but only one zone set can be active at one time. The active zone set determines the current fabric zoning.

A zoning database is maintained on each switch consisting of all inactive zone sets, the active zone set, all zones, aliases, and their membership. Table 3-1 describes the zoning database limits, excluding the active zone set. Refer to the *SANbox 5200 Series Switch Management User's Guide* for more information about zoning.

Limit	Description
MaxZoneSets	Maximum number of zone sets (256).
MaxZones	Maximum number of zones (2000).
MaxAliases	Maximum number of aliases (2500).
MaxTotalMembers	Maximum number of zone and alias members (10000) that can be stored in the switch's zoning database.
MaxZonesInZoneSets	Maximum number of zones that are components of zone sets (2000), excluding the orphan zone set, that can be stored in the switch's zoning database. Each instance of a zone in a zone set counts toward this maximum.
MaxMembersPerZone	Maximum number of members in a zone (2000)
MaxMembersPerAlias	Maximum number of members in an alias (2000)

Table 3-1. Zoning Database Limits

### 3.2.1 Soft Zones

Soft zoning divides the fabric for purposes of controlling device discovery. Devices in the same soft zone automatically discover and communicate freely with all other members of the same zone. The soft zone boundary is not secure; traffic across soft zones can occur if addressed correctly. The following rules apply to soft zones:

- Soft zones that include members from multiple switches need not include the ports of the inter-switch links.
- Soft zone boundaries yield to ACL zone boundaries.
- Soft zones can overlap; that is, a port can be a member of more than one soft zone.
- Membership can be defined by Fibre Channel address, domain ID and port number, or port worldwide name.
- Soft zoning supports FL\_Ports and F\_Ports.

# 3.2.2

# **Access Control List Hard Zones**

Access Control List (ACL) zoning divides the fabric for purposes of controlling discovery and inbound traffic. ACL zoning is a type of hard zoning that is hardware enforced. This type of zoning is useful for controlling access to certain devices without totally isolating them from the fabric. Members can communicate with each other and transmit outside the ACL zone, but cannot receive inbound traffic from outside the zone. The following rules apply to ACL zones:

- The ACL zone boundary is secure against inbound traffic.
- ACL zones can overlap; that is, a port can be a member of more than one ACL zone.
- ACL zones that include members from multiple switches need not include the ports of the inter-switch links.
- ACL zone boundaries supersede soft zone boundaries.
- Membership can be defined only by domain ID and port number. A switch port can be a member of multiple ACL zones whose combined membership does not exceed 64.

#### 3.3 Performance

The SANbox 5200 Series switch supports class 2 and class 3 Fibre Channel service at transmission rates of 1-, 2- or 10-Gbps with a maximum frame size of 2148 bytes. A 1-Gbps/2-Gbps port adapts its transmission speed to match that of the device to which it is connected prior to login when the connected device powers up. 10-Gbps ports transmit at 10-Gbps. Related performance characteristics include the following:

- Distance
- Bandwidth
- Latency

#### 3.3.1 Distance

Consider the physical distribution of devices and switches in the fabric. Choose SFP transceivers that are compatible with the cable type, distance, Fibre Channel revision level, and the device host bus adapter. Refer to Appendix A Specifications for more information about cable types and transceivers.

Each Fibre Channel port is supported by a data buffer with a 16 credit capacity; that is, 16 maximum sized frames. For fibre optic cables, this enables full bandwidth over the following approximate distances:

- 26 kilometers at 1-Gbps (0.6 credits/Km)
- 13 kilometers at 2-Gbps (1.2 credits/Km).

Beyond these distances, however, there is some loss of efficiency because the transmitting port must wait for an acknowledgement before sending the next frame.

Longer distances can be spanned at full bandwidth on 1-Gbps/2-Gbps ports by extending credits to G\_Ports, F\_Ports, and E\_Ports. Each port can donate 15 credits to a pool from which a recipient port can borrow. However, 1-Gbps/2-Gbps ports can borrow only from other 1-Gbps/2-Gbps ports. 10-Gbps ports cannot borrow or donate credits. The recipient port also loses a credit in the process. For example, you can configure a 1-Gbps/2-Gbps recipient port to borrow 15 credits from one donor port for a total of 30 credits (15+15=30). This will support communication over the following approximate distances:

- 50 Km at 1-Gbps (30÷0.6)
- 25 Km at 2-Gbps (30÷1.2)

You can configure recipient and donor ports using the SANsurfer Switch Manager application or the Set Config command. Refer to "Set Config Command" on page B-61 for more information.



#### 3.3.2 Bandwidth

Bandwidth is a measure of the volume of data that can be transmitted at a given transmission rate. A 1-Gbps/2-Gbps port can transmit or receive at nominal rates of 1-Gbps or 2-Gbps depending on the device to which it is connected. This corresponds to 106 MB and 212 MB respectively. 10-Gbps ports transmit at a nominal rate of 10-Gbps which corresponds to an actual bandwidth of 1275 MB. Multiple source ports can transmit to the same destination port if the destination bandwidth is greater than or equal to the combined source bandwidth. For example, two 1-Gbps source ports can transmit to the same 2-Gbps destination port. Similarly, one source port can feed multiple destination ports if the combined destination bandwidth is greater than or equal to the source bandwidth.

In multiple chassis fabrics, each link between chassis contributes 106, 212, or 1275 megabytes of bandwidth between those chassis depending on the speed of the link. When additional bandwidth is needed between devices, increase the number of links between the connecting switches. The switch guarantees in-order-delivery with any number of links between chassis.

## 3.3.3 Latency

Latency is a measure of how fast a frame travels from one port to another. The factors that affect latency include transmission rate and the source/destination port relationship as shown in Table 3-2.

		C	Destination Rate	
a	Gbps	1	2	10
e Rate	1	< 0.6 µsec	< 0.8 µsec¹	< 0.8 µsec¹
Source	2	< 0.5 µsec	< 0.4 µsec	< 0.4 µsec¹
Ň	10	< 0.4 µsec	< 0.3 µsec	< 0.2 µsec

Table 3-2. Port-to-Port Latency

<sup>1</sup> Based on minimum size frame of 36 bytes. Latency increases for larger frame sizes.

#### 3.4 Feature Licensing

The SANbox 5200 Series switch can come from the factory as an 8-, 12-, 16-, or 20-port switch, enabling ports 0-7, 0-11, 0-15, or 0-19 respectively. You can upgrade the SANbox 5200 Series switch to enable additional ports up to the 20-port maximum through the purchase of a license key.

Consider the number of ports that you require and the need for 10-Gbps ports. Make arrangements to purchase the necessary license key from your switch distributor or authorized reseller. Refer to "Upgrading the SANbox 5200 Series Switch" on page 4-28 for information about upgrading your switch.

#### 3.5 Multiple Chassis Fabrics

By connecting switches together you can expand the number of available ports for devices. Each switch in the fabric is identified by a unique domain ID, and the fabric can automatically resolve domain ID conflicts. Because the Fibre Channel ports are self-configuring, you can connect SANbox 5200 Series switches together in a wide variety of topologies.

You can connect up to four SANbox 5200 Series switches together through the 10-Gbps ports, thus preserving the user ports for devices. This is called stacking. SANbox 5200 Series switches divide the 10-Gbps port buffer to balance traffic across the connection. The 10-Gbps ports operate with any standard XPAK interface. If the 10-Gbps ports are not licensed, you can connect SANbox 5200 Series switches with other switches through the 1-Gbps/2-Gbps ports in a wide variety of topologies. Consider your topology and cabling requirements.

## 3.5.1

# **Optimizing Device Performance**

When choosing a topology for a multiple chassis fabric, you should also consider the locality of your server and storage devices and the performance requirements of your application. Storage applications such as video distribution, medical record storage/retrieval or real-time data acquisition can have specific latency or bandwidth requirements.

The SANbox 5200 Series switch provides the lowest latency of any product in its class. Refer to "Performance" on page 3-4 for information about latency. However, the highest performance is achieved on Fibre Channel switches by keeping traffic within a single switch instead of relying on ISLs. Therefore, for optimal device performance, place devices on the same switch under the following conditions:

- Heavy I/O traffic between specific server and storage devices.
- Distinct speed mismatch between devices such as the following:
  - A 2-Gbps server and a slower 1-Gbps storage device
  - A high performance server and slow tape storage device

## 3.5.2 Domain ID, Principal Priority, and Domain ID Lock

The following switch configuration settings affect multiple chassis fabrics:

Domain ID

OLOGIC

- Principal priority
- Domain ID lock

The domain ID is a unique number from 1–239 that identifies each switch in a fabric. The principal priority is a number (1–255) that determines the principal switch which manages domain ID assignments for the fabric. The switch with the highest principal priority (1 is high, 255 is low) becomes the principal switch. If the principal priority is the same for all switches in a fabric, the switch with the lowest WWN becomes the principal switch.

The domain ID lock allows (False) or prevents (True) the reassignment of the domain ID on that switch. Switches come from the factory with the domain ID set to 1, the domain ID lock set to False, and the principal priority set to 254. Refer to the *SANbox 5200 Series Switch Management User's Guide* for information about changing the domain ID and domain ID lock using SANsurfer Switch Manager. Refer to the "Set Config Command" on page B-61 for information about changing the domain ID, domain ID lock, and principal priority parameters.

An unresolved domain ID conflict means that the switch with the higher WWN will isolate as a separate fabric, and the Logged-In LEDs on both switches will flash green to show the affected ports. If you connect a new switch to an existing fabric with its domain ID unlocked, and a domain ID conflict occurs, the new switch will isolate as a separate fabric. However, you can remedy this by resetting the new switch or taking it offline then back online. The principal switch will reassign the domain ID and the switch will join the fabric.

**NOTE:** Domain ID reassignment is not reflected in zoning that is defined by domain ID/port number pair or Fibre Channel address. You must reconfigure zones that are affected by domain ID reassignment. To prevent zoning definitions from becoming invalid under these conditions, lock the domain IDs using SANsurfer Switch Manager or the Set Config Switch command.

## 3.5.3 Stacking

You can connect up to four 20-port SANbox 5200 Series switches together through the 10-Gbps ports, thus preserving the user ports for devices. This is called stacking. The following 2-, 3-, and 4-switch stacking configurations are recommended for best performance and redundancy. Each 10-Gbps port contributes 1 GB of bandwidth between chassis with one chassis hop between any two ports. Figure 3-1 shows a two-switch stack of model 5200 switches using two 3-inch XPAK switch stacking cables. 32 1-Gbps/2-Gbps ports are available for devices.

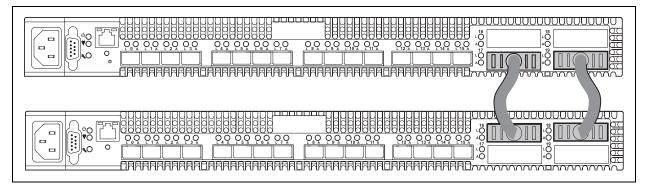


Figure 3-1. Two-Switch Stack

Figure 3-2 shows a three-switch stack of model 5200 switches using two 3-inch and one 9-inch XPAK switch stacking cables. 48 1-Gbps/2-Gbps ports are available for devices.

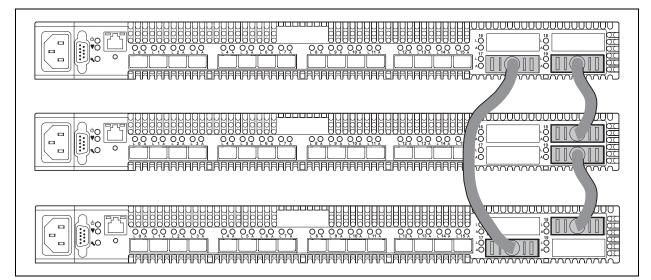


Figure 3-2. Three-Switch Stack



Figure 3-3 shows a four-switch stack of model 5200 switches using three 3-inch and three 9-inch XPAK switch stacking cables. 64 1-Gbps/2-Gbps ports are available for devices.

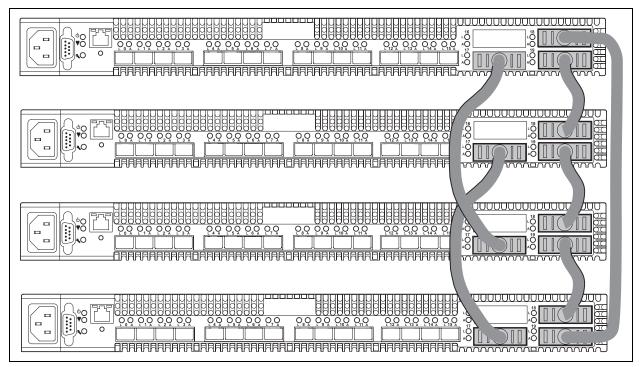


Figure 3-3. Four-Switch Stack

### 3.5.4 Common Topologies

The SANbox 5200 Series switch supports the following topologies using the 1-Gbps/2-Gbps Fibre Channel ports:

- Cascade
- Mesh
- Multistage®

## 3.5.4.1

## **Cascade Topology**

A cascade topology describes a fabric in which the switches are connected in series. If you connect the last switch back to the first switch, you create a cascade-with-a-loop topology as shown in Figure 3-4. The loop reduces latency because any switch can route traffic in the shortest direction to any switch in the loop. The loop also provides failover should a switch fail.

Using 16-port model 5200 switches, the cascade fabric shown in Figure 3-4 has the following characteristics:

- Each chassis link contributes up to 212 MB of bandwidth between chassis, 425 MB in full duplex. However, because of the sequential structure, that bandwidth will be shared by traffic between devices on other chassis.
- Latency between any two ports is no more than two chassis hops.
- 48 1-Gbps/2-Gbps Fibre Channel ports are available for devices.

Figure 3-4. Cascade-with-a-Loop Topology

### 3.5.4.2 Mesh Topology

A mesh topology describes a fabric in which each chassis has at least one port directly connected to each other chassis in the fabric. Using 16-port SANbox 5200 Series switches the mesh fabric shown in Figure 3-5 has the following characteristics:

- Each link contributes up to 212 MB of bandwidth between switches, 425 MB in full duplex. Because of multiple parallel paths, there is less competition for this bandwidth than with a cascade or a Multistage topology.
- Latency between any two ports is one chassis hop.
- 40 1-Gbps/2-Gbps Fibre Channel ports are available for devices.

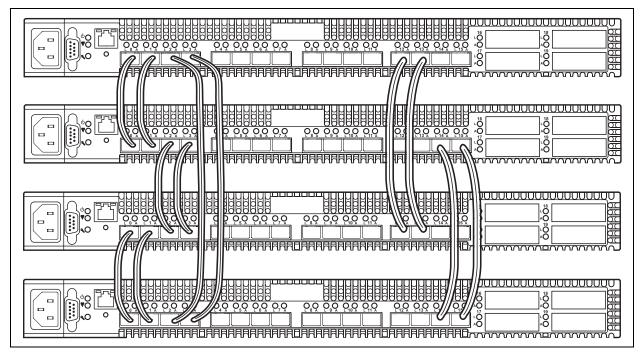


Figure 3-5. Mesh Topology

## 3.5.4.3 Multistage Topology

A Multistage topology describes a fabric in which two or more edge switches connect to one or more core switches. Using 16-port model 5200 switches, the Multistage fabric shown in Figure 3-6 has the following characteristics:

- Each link contributes up to 212 MB of bandwidth between chassis. Competition for this bandwidth is less than that of a cascade topology, but greater than that of the mesh topology.
- Latency between any two ports is no more than two chassis hops.
- 52 1-Gbps/2-Gbps Fibre Channel ports are available for devices.

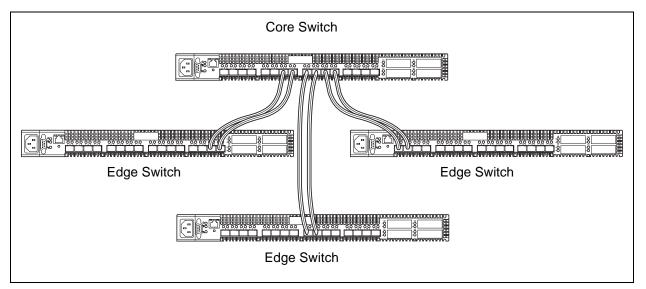


Figure 3-6. Multistage Topology



#### 3.6 Switch Services

You can configure your switch to suit the demands of your environment by enabling or disabling a variety of switch services. Familiarize yourself with the following switch services and determine which ones you need:

- **Telnet**: Provides for the management of the switch over a Telnet connection. Disabling this service is not recommended. The default is enabled.
- Secure Shell (SSH): Provides for secure remote connections to the switch using SSH. Your workstation must also use an SSH client. The default is disabled.
- Switch Management: Provides for out-of-band management of the switch with SANsurfer Switch Manager, the SANsurfer Switch Manager Application Programming Interface, SNMP, and CIM. If this service is disabled, the switch can only be managed inband or through the serial port. The default is enabled.
- Inband Management: Provides for the management of the switch over an inter-switch link using SANsurfer Switch Manager, SNMP, management server, or the application programming interface. If you disable inband management, you can no longer communicate with that switch by means other than a direct Ethernet or serial connection. The default is enabled.
- Secure Socket Layer (SSL): Provides for secure SSL connections for SANsurfer Switch Manager, the SANsurfer Switch Manager web applet, SANsurfer Switch Manager Application Programming Interface, and CIM. This service must be enabled to authenticate users through a RADIUS server when using SANsurfer Switch Manager. To enable secure SSL connections, you must first synchronize the date and time on the switch and workstation. Enabling SSL automatically creates a security certificate on the switch. The default is enabled.
- SANsurfer Switch Manager web applet: Provides for access to the SANsurfer Switch Manager web applet. The web applet enables you to point at a switch with an internet browser and run SANsurfer Switch Manager through the browser. The default is enabled.
- Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP): Provides for the management of the switch through third-party applications that use the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP). Security consists of a read community string and a write community string that serve as passwords that control read and write access to the switch. These strings are set at the factory to these well-known defaults and should be changed if SNMP is to be enabled. Otherwise, you risk unwanted access to the switch. The default is enabled.

- Network Time Protocol (NTP): Provides for the synchronizing of switch and workstation dates and times with an NTP server. This helps to prevent invalid SSL certificates and timestamp confusion in the event log. The default is disabled.
- Common Information Model (CIM): Provides for the management of the switch through third-party applications that use CIM. The default is enabled.
- **File Transfer Protocol (FTP)**: Provides for transferring files rapidly between the workstation and the switch using FTP. The default is enabled.
- Management Server (MS): Enables or disables the management of the switch through third-party applications that use GS-3 Management Server. The default is disabled.

#### 3.7 Fabric Security

An effective security profile begins with a security policy that states the requirements. A threat analysis is needed to define the plan of action followed by an implementation that meets the security policy requirements. Internet portals, such as remote access and E-mail, usually present the greatest threats. Fabric security should also be considered in defining the security policy.

Most fabrics are located at a single site and are protected by physical security, such as key-code locked computer rooms. For these cases, security methods such as user passwords for equipment and zoning for controlling device access, are satisfactory.

Fabric security is needed when security policy requirements are more demanding: for example, when fabrics span multiple locations and traditional physical protection is insufficient to protect the IT infrastructure. Another benefit of fabric security is that it creates a structure that helps prevent unintended changes to the fabric.

Fabric security consists of the following:

- Connection Security
- Device Security
- User Account Security



#### 3.7.1 Connection Security

Connection security provides an encrypted data path for switch management methods. The switch supports the Secure Shell (SSH) protocol for the command line interface and the Secure Socket Layer (SSL) protocol for management applications such as SANsurfer Switch Manager and Common Information Module (CIM).

The SSL handshake process between the workstation and the switch involves the exchanging of certificates. These certificates contain the public and private keys that define the encryption. When the SSL service is enabled, a certificate is automatically created on the switch. The workstation validates the switch certificate by comparing the workstation date and time to the switch certificate creation date and time. For this reason, it is important to synchronize the workstation and switch with the same date, time, and time zone. The switch certificate is valid 24 hours before its creation date and 365 days after its creation date. If the certificate should become invalid, refer to the "Create Command" on page B-19 for information about creating a certificate.

Consider your requirements for connection security: for the command line interface (SSH), management applications such as SANsurfer Switch Manager (SSL), or both. If SSL connection security is required, also consider using the Network Time Protocol (NTP) to synchronize workstations and switches.

- Refer to System keyword of the "Set Setup Command" on page B-80 for information about enabling the NTP client on the switch and configuring the NTP server.
- Refer to the "Set Command" on page B-59 for information about setting the time zone.

# 3.7.2 Device Security

Device security provides for the authorization and authentication of devices that you attach to a switch. You can configure a switch with a group of devices against which the switch authorizes new attachments by devices, other switches, or devices issuing management server commands. Device security is configured through the use of security sets and groups. A group is a list of device worldwide names that are authorized to attach to a switch. There are three types of groups: one for other switches (ISL), another for devices (port), and a third for devices issuing management server commands (MS). A security set is a set of up to three groups with no more than one of each group type. The security configuration is made up of all security sets on the switch. The security database has the following limits:

- Maximum number of security sets is 4.
- Maximum number of groups is 16.
- Maximum number of members in a group is 1000.
- Maximum total number of group members is 1000.

In addition to authorization, the switch can be configured to require authentication to validate the identity of the connecting switch, device, or host. Authentication can be performed locally using the switch's security database, or remotely using a Remote Dial-In User Service (RADIUS) server such as Microsoft® RADIUS. With a RADIUS server, the security database for the entire fabric resides on the server. In this way, the security database can be managed centrally, rather than on each switch. You can configure up to five RADIUS servers to provide failover.

You can configure the RADIUS server to authenticate just the switch or both the switch and the initiator device if the device supports authentication. When using a RADIUS server, every switch in the fabric must have a network connection. A RADIUS server can also be configured to authenticate user accounts as described in "User Account Security" on page 3-26. A secure connection is required to authenticate user logins with a RADIUS server. Refer to "Connection Security" on page 3-15 for more information.

Consider the devices, switches, and management agents and evaluate the need for authorization and authentication. Also consider whether the security database is to distributed on the switches or centralized on a RADIUS server and how many servers to configure.

The following examples illustrate how to configure a security database:

- Security Example: Switches and HBAs
- Security Example: RADIUS Server
- Security Example: Host Authentication

## 3.7.2.1 Security Example: Switches and HBAs

Consider the fabric shown in Figure 3-7. In this fabric, Switch\_1, HBA\_1, and Switch\_2 support security while the JBOD and HBA\_2 do not. The objective is to secure F\_Ports and E\_Ports in the fabric. To do this, configure security on the devices that support security: Switch\_1, Switch\_2, and HBA\_1.

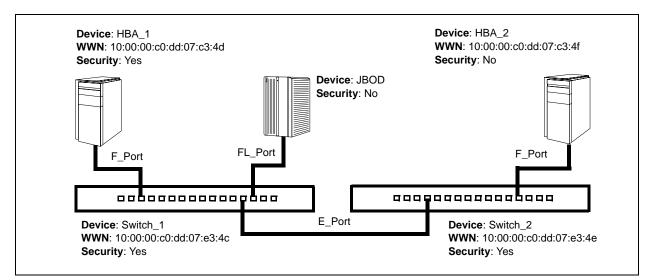


Figure 3-7. Security Example: Switches and HBAs

- 1. Configure security on Switch\_1. Create a security set (Security\_Set\_1) on Switch\_1.
  - a. Create a port group (Group\_Port\_1) in Security\_Set\_1 with Switch\_1 and HBA\_1 as members. The JBOD is a loop device, and is therefore, excluded from the port group.

	Port Group on Switch_1: Group_Port_1
Switch_1	Node WWN: 10:00:00:c0:dd:07:e3:4c Authentication: CHAP Primary Hash: MD5 Primary Secret: 0123456789abcdef
HBA_1	Node WWN: 10:00:00:c0:dd:07:c3:4d Authentication: CHAP Primary Hash: MD5 Primary Secret: fedcba9876543210

- You must specify HBAs by node worldwide name. Switches can be specified by port or node worldwide name. The type of switch worldwide name you use in the switch security database must be the same as that in the HBA security database. For example, if you specify a switch with a port worldwide name in the switch security database, you must also specify that switch in the HBA security database with the same port worldwide name.
- For CHAP authentication, create 32-character hexadecimal or 16-character ASCI secrets. The switch secret must be shared with the HBA security database.
- b. Create an ISL group (Group\_ISL\_1) in Security\_Set\_1 with Switch\_1 and Switch\_2 as members. The Switch\_1 secret must be shared with the Switch\_2 security database.

	ISL Group on Switch_1: Group_ISL_1
Switch_1	Node WWN: 10:00:00:c0:dd:07:e3:4c Authentication: CHAP Primary Hash: MD5 Primary Secret: 0123456789abcdef Binding: None
Switch_2	Node WWN: 10:00:00:c0:dd:07:e3:4e Authentication: CHAP Primary Hash: MD5 Primary Secret: abcdefabcdef012 Binding: None

- 2. Configure security on HBA\_1 using the appropriate management tool. Logins between the Switch\_1 and HBA\_1 will be challenged for their respective secrets. Therefore, the secrets for Switch\_1 and HBA\_1 that you configured on Switch\_1 must also be configured on HBA\_1.
- 3. Save Security\_Set\_1 on Switch\_1 and prepare to activate it. Activating a security set does not affect currently logged-in ports. Therefore, to apply the security policy that you designed in the security database, you must offline the secured ports, activate the security set, then place the secured ports back online.

- 4. Configure security on Switch\_2. Create a security set (Security\_Set\_2) on Switch\_2.
  - a. Create a port group (Group\_Port\_2) in Security\_Set\_2. HBA\_2 is the only member because HBA\_2 does not support authentication.

	Port Group on Switch_2: Group_Port_2	
HBA_2	Node WWN: 10:00:00:c0:dd:07:e3:4c Authentication: None Binding: None	

b. Create an ISL group (Group\_ISL\_2) in Security\_Set\_2 with Switch\_1 and Switch\_2 as members. This is a replication of the entries in ISL group in the Switch\_1 security database.

	ISL Group on Switch_2: Group_ISL_2
Switch_1	Node WWN: 10:00:00:c0:dd:07:e3:4c Authentication: CHAP Primary Hash: MD5 Primary Secret: 0123456789abcdef Binding: None
Switch_2	Node WWN: 10:00:00:c0:dd:07:e3:4e Authentication: CHAP Primary Hash: MD5 Secret: abcdefabcdef012 Binding: None

5. Save Security\_Set\_2 on Switch\_2 and activate it.

# 3.7.2.2 Security Example: RADIUS Server

Consider the fabric shown in Figure 3-8. This fabric is similar to the one shown in Figure 3-7 with the addition of Radius\_1 acting as a RADIUS server. Authorization and authentication is passed from the switch to Radius\_1 in the following cases:

- HBA\_1 login to Switch\_1
- Switch\_1 login to Switch\_2
- Switch\_2 login to Switch\_1

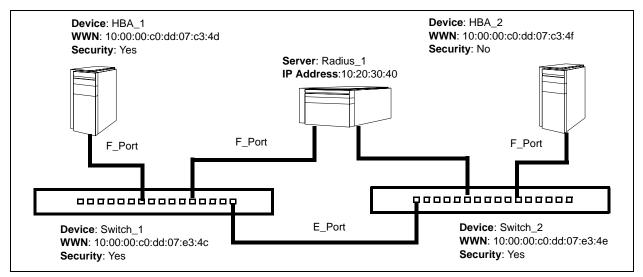


Figure 3-8. Security Example: RADIUS Server



 Configure the Radius\_1 host as a RADIUS server on Switch\_1 and Switch\_2 to authenticate device logins. Specify the server IP address and the secret with which the switches will authenticate with the server. Configure the switches so that devices authenticate through the switches only if the RADIUS server is unavailable.

Radius_1 Configuration on Switch_1 and Switch_2		
Device Authentication Order	RadiusLocal – Authenticate devices using the RADIUS server security database first. If the RADIUS server is unavailable, then use the local switch security database.	
Total Servers	1 – Enables support for one RADIUS server	
Device Authentication Server	True – Enables Radius_1 to authenticate device logins.	
Server IP Address	10.20.30.40	
Secret	1234567890123456 – 16-character ASCI string (MD5 hash)	

- 2. Configure security on Switch\_1. Create a security set (Security\_Set\_1) on Switch\_1.
  - a. Create a port group (Group\_Port\_1) in Security\_Set\_1 with Switch\_1 and HBA\_1 as members. The JBOD is a loop device, and is therefore, excluded from the port group.

	Port Group on Switch_1: Group_Port_1
Switch_1	Node WWN: 10:00:00:c0:dd:07:e3:4c Authentication: CHAP Primary Hash: MD5 Primary Secret: 0123456789abcdef
HBA_1	Node WWN: 10:00:00:c0:dd:07:c3:4d Authentication: CHAP Primary Hash: MD5 Primary Secret: fedcba9876543210

- You must specify HBAs by node worldwide name. Switches can be specified by port or node worldwide name. The type of switch worldwide name you use in the switch security database must be the same as that in the HBA security database. For example, if you specify a switch with a port worldwide name in the switch security database, you must also specify that switch in the HBA security database with the same port worldwide name.
- For CHAP authentication, create 32-character hexadecimal or 16-character ASCI secrets. The switch secret must be shared with the HBA security database.
- b. Create an ISL group (Group\_ISL\_1) in Security\_Set\_1 with Switch\_1 and Switch\_2 as members. The Switch\_1 secret must be shared with the Switch\_2 security database.

	ISL Group on Switch_1: Group_ISL_1
Switch_1	Node WWN: 10:00:00:c0:dd:07:e3:4c Authentication: CHAP Primary Hash: MD5 Primary Secret: 0123456789abcdef Binding: None
Switch_2	Node WWN: 10:00:00:c0:dd:07:e3:4e Authentication: CHAP Primary Hash: MD5 Primary Secret: abcdefabcdef012 Binding: None

- 3. Configure security on HBA\_1 using the appropriate management tool. Logins between the Switch\_1 and HBA\_1 will be challenged (CHAP) for their respective secrets. Therefore, the secrets for Switch\_1 and HBA\_1 that you configured on Switch\_1 must also be configured on HBA\_1.
- 4. Save Security\_Set\_1 on Switch\_1 and prepare to activate it. Activating a security set does not affect currently logged-in ports. Therefore, to apply the security policy that you designed in the security database, you must offline the secured ports, activate the security set, then place the secured ports back online.

- 5. Configure security on Switch\_2. Create a security set (Security\_Set\_2) on Switch\_2.
  - a. Create a port group (Group\_Port\_2) in Security\_Set\_2. HBA\_2 is the only member because HBA\_2 does not support authentication.

	Port Group on Switch_2: Group_Port_2	
HBA_2	Node WWN: 10:00:00:c0:dd:07:e3:4c Authentication: None Binding: None	

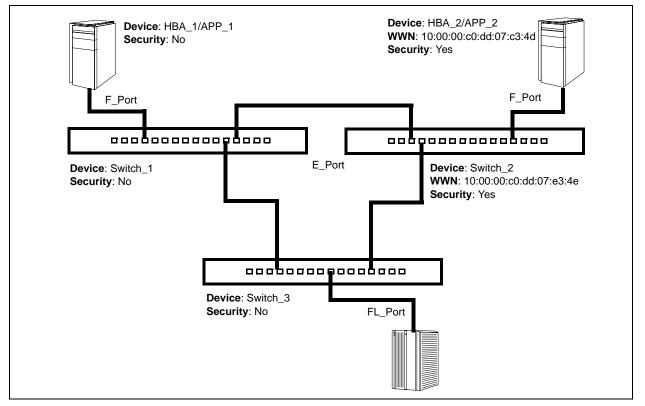
b. Create an ISL group (Group\_ISL\_2) in Security\_Set\_2 with Switch\_1 and Switch\_2 as members. This is a replication of the entries in ISL group in the Switch\_1 security database.

	ISL Group on Switch_2: Group_ISL_2
Switch_1	Node WWN: 10:00:00:c0:dd:07:e3:4c Authentication: CHAP Primary Hash: MD5 Primary Secret: 0123456789abcdef Binding: None
Switch_2	Node WWN: 10:00:00:c0:dd:07:e3:4e Authentication: CHAP Primary Hash: MD5 Primary Secret: abcdefabcdef0123 Binding: None

6. Save Security\_Set\_2 on Switch\_2 and activate it.

# 3.7.2.3 Security Example: Host Authentication

Consider the fabric shown in Figure 3-9. In this fabric, only Switch\_2 and HBA\_2/APP\_2 support security, where APP\_2 is a host application. The objective is to secure the management server on Switch\_2 from unauthorized access by an HBA or an associated host application.



### Figure 3-9. Security Example: Management Server

- 1. Create a security set (Security\_Set\_2) on Switch\_2.
- 2. Create a Management Server group (Group\_1) in Security\_Set\_2 with Switch\_2 and HBA\_2 or APP\_2 as its member.
  - You must specify HBAs by node worldwide name. Switches can be specified by port or node worldwide name. The type of switch worldwide name you use in the switch security database must be the same as that in the HBA security database. For example, if you specify a switch with a port worldwide name in the switch security database, you must also specify that switch in the HBA security database with the same port worldwide name.

■ For MD5 authentication, create secrets.

MS Group: Group_1	
Switch_2	Node WWN: 10:00:00:c0:dd:07:c3:4e CT Authentication: True Hash: MD5 Secret: 9876543210fedcba9
HBA_2 or APP_2	Node WWN: 10:00:00:c0:dd:07:c3:4d CT Authentication: True Hash: MD5 Secret: fedcba9876543210

- 3. Configure security on HBA\_2 or APP\_2 using the appropriate management tool. Logins between the Switch\_2 and HBA\_2 or APP\_2 will be challenged (MD5) for their respective secrets. Therefore, the secrets that you configured for HBA\_2 or APP\_2 on Switch\_2 must also be configured on HBA\_2 or APP\_2.
- 4. Save Security\_Set\_2 and prepare to activate it. Activating a security set does not affect currently logged-in ports. Therefore, to apply the security policy that you designed in the security database, you must offline the secured ports, activate the security set, then place the secured ports online.

# 3.7.3 User Account Security

User account security consists of the administration of account names, passwords, expiration date, and authority level. If an account has Admin authority, all management tasks can be performed by that account in both SANsurfer Switch Manager<sup>™</sup> and the Telnet command line interface. Otherwise only monitoring tasks are available. The default account name, Admin, is the only account that can create or change account names and passwords. Account names and passwords are always required when connecting to a switch.

Authentication of the user account and password can be performed locally using the switch's user account database or it can be done remotely using a RADIUS server such as Microsoft® RADIUS. Authenticating user logins on a RADIUS server requires a secure management connection to the switch. Refer to "Connection Security" on page 3-15 for information about securing the management connection. A RADIUS server can also be used to authenticate devices and other switches as described in "Device Security" on page 3-16.

Consider your management needs and determine the number of user accounts, their authority needs, and expiration dates. Also consider the advantages of centralizing user administration and authentication on a RADIUS server.

**NOTE:** If the same user account exists on a switch and its RADIUS server, that user can login with either password, but the authority and account expiration will always come from the switch database.



#### <sup>3.8</sup> Fabric Management

The SANsurfer Switch Manager application and CLI execute on a management workstation that provides for the configuration, control, and maintenance of multiple fabrics. Supported platforms include Windows, Solaris, and Linux. The application can be installed and executed on the workstation, or you can run the SANsurfer Switch Manager web applet that is resident on the switch.

Consider how many fabrics will be managed, how many management workstations are needed, and whether the fabrics will be managed with the CLI, SANsurfer Switch Manager, or the SANsurfer Switch Manager web applet.

A switch supports a combined maximum of 19 logins reserved as follows:

- 4 logins or sessions for internal applications such as management server and SNMP
- 9 high priority Telnet sessions
- 6 logins or sessions for SANsurfer Switch Manager inband and out-of-band logins, Application Programming Interface (API) inband and out-of-band logins, and Telnet logins. Additional logins will be refused.



Notes

# Section 4 Installation

This section describes how to install and configure the SANbox 5200 Series switch. It also describes how to load new firmware and how to recover a disabled switch.

#### 4.1 Sito Ro

## **Site Requirements**

Consider the following items when installing a SANbox 5200 Series switch:

- Fabric Management Workstation
- Switch Power Requirements
- Environmental Conditions

4.1.1

# **Fabric Management Workstation**

The requirements for fabric management workstations running SANsurfer Switch Manager are described in Table 4-1:

Operating System	<ul> <li>Windows 2000/2003/XP</li> <li>Solaris 8/9/10</li> <li>Linux® Red Hat® EL 3.x</li> <li>S.u.S.E® Linux 9.0 Enterprise</li> <li>Mac® OS X 10.3</li> </ul>
Memory	256 MB or more
Disk Space	150 MB per installation
Processor	500 MHz or faster
Hardware	CD-ROM drive, RJ-45 Ethernet port, RS-232 serial port (optional)
Internet Browser	Microsoft® Internet Explorer® 5.0 and later Netscape Navigator® 4.72 and later Mozilla™ 1.02 and later Safari® Java 2 Runtime Environment to support web applet

Table 4-1. Management Workstation Requirements

Telnet workstations require an RJ-45 Ethernet port or an RS-232 serial port and an operating system with a Telnet client.

# 4.1.2

## **Switch Power Requirements**

Power requirements are 1 Amp at 100 VAC or 0.5 A at 240 VAC.

### 4.1.3

# **Environmental Conditions**

Consider the factors that affect the climate in your facility such as equipment heat dissipation and ventilation. The switch requires the following operating conditions:

- Operating temperature range: 5 40°C (41 104°F)
- Relative humidity: 15 80%, non-condensing

#### <sup>4.2</sup> Installing a Switch

Unpack the switch and accessories. The SANbox 5200 Series product is shipped with the components shown in Figure 4-1:

- SANbox 5200 Series Fibre Channel Switch (1) with firmware installed
- Power cord (1) model 5200
- Power cords (2) model 5202
- Rubber feet (4)
- Mounting brackets (2) model 5200
- CD-ROM containing the SANsurfer Switch Manager switch management application, release notes, and documentation.

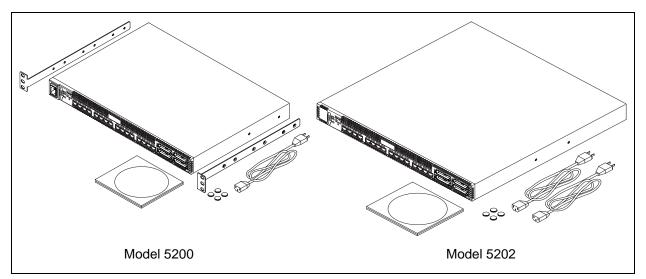


Figure 4-1. SANbox 5200 Series Fibre Channel Switch



Installing a SANbox 5200 Series switch involves the following steps:

- 1. Mount the switch.
- 2. Install transceivers.
- 3. Connect the management workstation to the switch.
- 4. Configure the management workstation.
- 5. Install the management application.
- 6. Start the management application.
- 7. Connect the switch to the AC power source.
- 8. Configure the switch.
- 9. Cable devices to the switch.

#### 4.2.1

## **Mount the Switch**

The switch can be placed on a flat surface and stacked or mounted in a 19" EIA rack. Refer to "Dimensions" on page A-3 for weight and dimensional specifications. Adhesive rubber feet are provided for surface mounts. Without the rubber feet, the switch occupies 1U of space in an EIA rack.

■ A model 5200 switch can be rack mounted without rails, however, rail kits are available from General Devices<sup>™</sup> Company, model number C-874:

General Devices Company, LTD. P.O. Box 39100 Indianapolis, IN 46239-0100 317-897-7000 www.generaldevices.com

A model 5202 switch requires a QLogic rail kit (part number SB5202-RACKKIT) for rack mounting. **WARNING!!** Mount switches in the rack so that the weight is distributed evenly. An unevenly loaded rack can become unstable possibly resulting in equipment damage or personal injury.

#### **AVERTISSEMENT!!**

Installer les commutateurs dans l'armoire informatique de sorte que le poids soit réparti uniformément. Une armoire informatique déséquilibré risque d'entraîner des blessures ou d'endommager l'équipement.

#### WARNUNG!!

Switches so in das Rack einbauen, dass das Gewicht gleichmäßig verteilt ist. Ein Rack mit ungleichmäßiger Gewichtsverteilung kann schwanken/umfallen und Gerätbeschädigung oder Verletzung verursachen.

**<u>CAUTION!</u>** If the switch is mounted in a closed or multi-unit rack assembly, make sure that the operating temperature inside the rack enclosure does not exceed the maximum rated ambient temperature. Refer to "Environmental" on page A-4.

Do not restrict chassis air flow. Allow 16 cm (6.5 in) minimum clearance at the front and rear of the switch (surface mount) or rack for service access and ventilation.

Multiple rack-mounted units connected to the AC supply circuit may overload that circuit or overload the AC supply wiring. Consider the power source capacity and the total power usage of all switches on the circuit. Refer to "Electrical" on page A-4.

Reliable grounding in the rack must be maintained from the switch chassis to the AC power source.

To mount a 5200 model switch in a rack without the use of rails, fasten the brackets to the switch as shown in Figure 4-2. Choose the bracket screw holes to produce the setback you want. Place the switch in the rack and fasten the bracket flanges to the rack with two screws on each side.

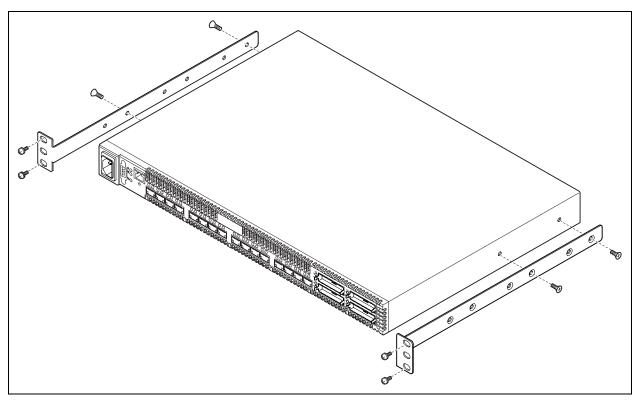


Figure 4-2. Mounting the Model 5200 Switch in a Rack without Rails

To mount a 5200 model switch in a rack using the General Devices C-874 rail kit, you must fasten the switch brackets and inner rails to the switch as shown in Figure 4-3. Use the screws that come with the rail kit. Refer to the rail kit instructions for complete information.

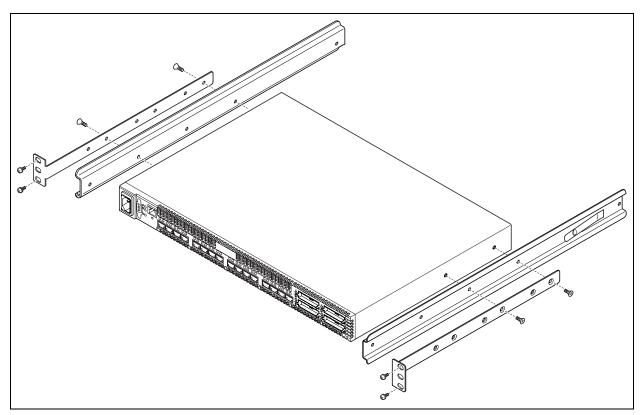


Figure 4-3. Mounting the Model 5200 Switch in a Rack with a Rail Kit

## 4.2.2 Install Transceivers

The switch supports a variety of SFP and XPAK transceivers. To install a transceiver, insert the transceiver into the port and gently press until it snaps in place. To remove a transceiver, gently press the transceiver into the port to release the tension, then pull on the release tab or lever and remove the transceiver. Different transceiver manufacturers have different release mechanisms. Consult the documentation for your transceiver.

**NOTE:** The transceiver will fit only one way. If the transceiver does not install under gentle pressure, flip it over and try again.

## **CAUTION!** To maintain proper air flow and prevent the switch from overheating, keep covers installed in unused 10-Gbps ports.

If you are using the 10-Gbps ports, remove the port covers by the cover tabs using your fingers or pliers as shown in Figure 4-4.

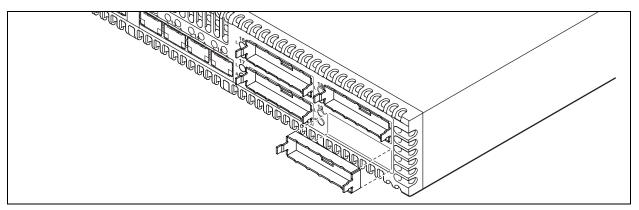


Figure 4-4. Removing 10-Gbps Port Covers

To install XPAK switch stacking cables, position the cable connectors with the circuit board toward the mid line of the respective switch faceplates as shown in Figure 4-5. When installing the 3-inch XPAK switch stacking cable, insert the cable connectors into the 10-Gbps ports at the same time.

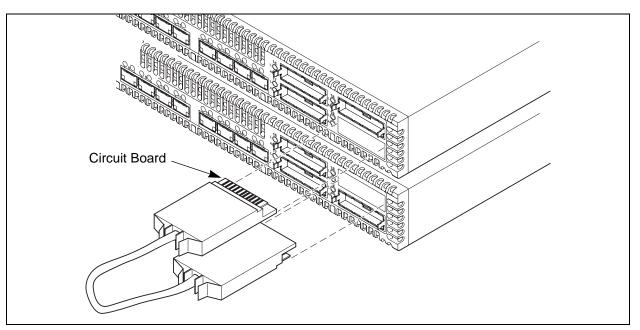


Figure 4-5. Installing XPAK Switch Stacking Cables

### 4.2.3 Connect the Workstation to the Switch

You can manage the switch using SANsurfer Switch Manager or the command line interface. SANsurfer Switch Manager requires an Ethernet connection to the switch. The command line interface can use an Ethernet connection or a serial connection. Choose a switch management method, then connect the management workstation to the switch in one of the following ways:

- Indirect Ethernet connection from the management workstation to the switch RJ-45 Ethernet connector through an Ethernet switch or a hub. This requires a 10/100 Base-T straight cable as shown in Figure 4-6.
- Direct Ethernet connection from the management workstation to the switch RJ-45 Ethernet connector. This requires a 10/100 Base-T cross-over cable as shown in Figure 4-6.
- Serial port connection from the management workstation to the switch RS-232 serial port connector. This requires a null modem F/F DB9 cable as shown in Figure 4-6.

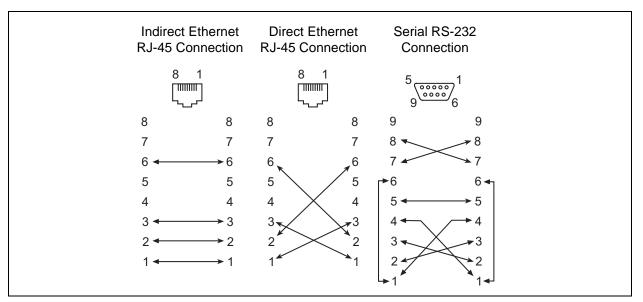


Figure 4-6. Workstation Cable Connections



## 4.2.4 Configure the Workstation

If you plan to use the command line interface to configure and manage the switch, you must configure the workstation. This involves setting the workstation IP address for Ethernet connections, or configuring the workstation serial port. If you plan to use SANsurfer Switch Manager to manage the switch, the Configuration Wizard manages the workstation IP address for you – proceed to "Install the Management Application" on page 4-11.

#### 4.2.4.1

## Setting the Workstation IP Address for Ethernet Connections

The default IP address of a new switch is 10.0.0.1. To ensure that your workstation is configured to communicate with the 10.0.0 subnet, refer to the following instructions for your workstation:

- For a Windows workstation, do the following:
  - 1. Choose the Start button. Choose Settings>Control Panel>Network and Dial-Up Connections.
  - 2. Choose Make New Connection.
  - 3. Click the **Connect to a private network through the Internet** radio button then click the **Next** button.
  - 4. Enter 10.0.0.253 for the IP address.
- For a Linux or Solaris workstation, open a command window and enter the following command where (interface) is your interface name:

ifconfig (interface) ipaddress 10.0.0.253 netmask 255.255.255.0 up



### 4.2.4.2 Configuring the Workstation Serial Port

To configure the workstation serial port, do the following:

- 1. Connect a null modem F/F DB9 cable from a COM port on the management workstation to the RS-232 serial port on the switch.
- 2. Configure the workstation serial port according to your platform:
  - For Windows:
    - a. Open the HyperTerminal application. Choose the **Start** button, select **Programs, Accessories, HyperTerminal,** and **HyperTerminal**.
    - b. Enter a name for the switch connection and choose an icon in the Connection Description window. Choose the **OK** button.
    - c. Enter the following COM Port settings in the COM Properties window and choose the **OK** button.
      - Bits per second: 9600
      - Data Bits: 8
      - Parity: None
      - Stop Bits: 1
      - □ Flow Control: None
  - For Linux:
    - a. Set up minicom to use the serial port. Create or modify the /etc/minirc.dfl file with the following content.
      - pr portdev/ttyS0
        pu minit
        pu mreset
        pu mhangup

pr portdev/ttyS0 specifies port 0 on the workstation. Choose "pr" setting to match the workstation port to which you connected the switch.

- b. Verify that all users have permission to run minicom. Review the /etc/minicom.users file and confirm that the line "ALL" exists or that there are specific user entries.
- For Solaris: Modify the /etc/remote file to include the following lines. /dev/term/a refers to serial port a. Choose the "dv" setting to match the workstation port to which you connected to the switch.

SANbox: \:dv=/dev/term/a:br#9600:el=^C^S^Q^U^D:ie=%\$:oe=^D:

3. Proceed to "Connect the Switch to AC Power" on page 4-20.



## 4.2.5 Install the Management Application

You can manage the switch using SANsurfer Switch Manager as a standalone application or as a part of SANsurfer Management Suite<sup>™</sup>. SANsurfer Management Suite is QLogic's integrated fabric management application, managing both HBAs and switches.

- If your switch was shipped with a SANsurfer Switch Manager Disk, refer to "SANsurfer Switch Manager" on page 4-11 for instructions on how to install SANsurfer Switch Manager.
- If your switch was shipped with a SANsurfer Management Suite Disk, refer to "SANsurfer Management Suite" on page 4-13 for instructions on how to install and upgrade SANsurfer Management Suite.

Refer to the SANbox 5200 Series Switch Management User's Guide for more information about using, exiting, and uninstalling SANsurfer Management Suite and SANsurfer Switch Manager.

#### 4.2.5.1

#### SANsurfer Switch Manager

You can install SANsurfer Switch Manager on a Windows, Linux, Solaris, or Mac OS X workstation. To install the SANsurfer Switch Manager application from the SANsurfer Switch Manager Installation Disk, do the following:

#### For a Windows platform:

- 1. Close all programs currently running, and insert the SANsurfer Switch Manager Installation Disk into the management workstation CD-ROM drive.
- 2. In the upper left corner of the product introduction screen, click **Management Software**.
- 3. Locate your platform in the table and click **Install**.

If the product introduction screen does not open in step 2, open the CD with Windows Explorer and run the installation program with the following path:

data\files\Management\_Software\Windows\Windows\_5.00.xx.xx.exe

#### For a Linux platform:

Open the CD and run the installation program with the following path:

data/files/Management\_Software/Linux/Linux\_5.00.xx.xx.bin

If there is no CD-ROM icon, do the following:

- 1. Open an xterm or other terminal window.
- 2. Mount the CD-ROM. From a shell prompt, enter the following:

mount /mnt/cdrom

3. Change directory to the location of the install program:

cd /mnt/cdrom/data/files/Management\_Software/Linux

4. Execute the install program and follow the installation instructions.

Linux\_5.00.xx.xx.bin

#### For a Solaris platform:

1. Open a terminal window. If the disk isn't already mounted, enter the following command:

volcheck

2. Enter following command to move to the directory on the CD that contains the executable:

cd /cdrom/cdrom0/data/files/Management\_Software/solaris

3. Execute the install program and follow the installation instructions:

Solaris\_5.00.xx.xx.bin

#### For a Mac OS X platform:

1. Open the CD and move to the following folder:

data/files/Management\_Software/MacOSX

- 2. Double click the applicaton zip file (MacOSX\_5.00.xx\_xxx.zip). This will place the install program on your desktop.
- 3. Locate the **Install** program icon on your desktop, execute it, and follow the installation instructions.



# 4.2.5.2 SANsurfer Management Suite

The following instructions describe how to install SANsurfer Management Suite and upgrade SANsurfer Switch Manager. You can install SANsurfer Management Suite (SMS) on a Windows, Linux, or Solaris workstation. Choose the instructions for your workstation:

- SMS Installation for Windows
- SMS Installation for Linux
- SMS Installation for Solaris

#### 4.2.5.2.1

### **SMS Installation for Windows**

Close all programs currently running, and insert the SANsurfer Management Suite Installation Disk into the management workstation CD-ROM drive.

- 1. If the SANsurfer Management Suite start page does not open in your default browser, do the following:
  - a. Using Windows Explorer, double-click the drive letter which contains the SANsurfer Management Suite Disk.
  - b. Locate and double-click the **Start\_Here.htm** file to open the SANsurfer Management Suite start page in your default browser.
- 2. On the SANsurfer Management Suite start page, click the **SANbox Switch Software** button.
- 3. On the SANbox Switch Software page, scroll to the SANbox Series area.
- 4. In the Operating System column, click the Win NT/2000 link.
- 5. Click the **SANsurfer Management Software** link to open the File Download dialog.
- 6. You can run the installation file from the CD-ROM or download the installation file to your hard drive. Choose one of the following:
  - Open the installation file from the CD-ROM and follow the SANsurfer Switch Manager installation instructions.
  - Specify a location in which to save the sansurfer\_windows\_install.exe file, and click the Save button. Double-click the saved sansurfer\_windows\_install.exe file and follow the installation instructions.

- 7. When the installation is complete, start SANsurfer Management Suite using the SANsurfer file from the SANsurfer Management Suite installation directory. You can also start SANsurfer Management Suite by clicking the SANsurfer icon (if installed) on the desktop or from the Start menu. In SMS, Click the **Switch** tab in the left pane. From the Help menu, select **About** ... and make note of the version number. Close SANsurfer Management Suite.
- 8. To ensure you are using the most recent version of SANsurfer Switch Manager, visit the QLogic support web page and go to Drivers, Software and Manuals.
  - Select your switch model from the pull-down menu. Locate the description for SANsurfer Switch Manager for Windows under "Management Software".
  - b. If the release version number (5.00.xx) is greater than what is currently installed, download the new version and proceed to step 9. Otherwise, no upgrade is needed and the SMS installation is complete.
- 9. To start the installer, open the zip file and run the **SANsurferSwitchMgr\_Windows\_5.00.xx.exe** file.
- 10. When prompted for an installation directory, click the **Choose** button and select the same folder as the SANsurfer Management Suite installation in step 6. The default SMS installation directory is **C:\Program Files\QLogic Corporation\SANsurfer**. Click the Next button.
- 11. When prompted for the location in which to create the program icons, click the **In an Existing Group** radio button, then specify the same group that was used for the SMS installation. The default SMS group is "QLogic Management Suite". Click the **Next** button.
- 12. Click the **Install** button to the start the installation. When the installation is complete, click the **Done** button.
- 13. In the SMS install directory, enter the following command to execute the chglax.bat file. If prompted to overwrite an existing file, enter Y to do so.

chglax.bat

14. Start SANsurfer Switch Manager from SANsurfer Management suite as you did in step 7 and confirm that the new version is running.

# 4.2.5.2.2 SMS Installation for Linux

Close all programs currently running, and insert the SANsurfer Management Suite Installation Disk into the management workstation CD-ROM drive.

- 1. If a file browser dialog opens showing icons for the contents of the CD-ROM, double-click the **Start\_Here.htm** file to open the SANsurfer Management Suite start page. If a file browser does not open, double-click the CD-ROM icon to open the browser. If there is no CD-ROM icon, do the following:
  - a. Open an xterm or other terminal window.
  - b. Mount the CD-ROM. From a shell prompt, enter the following command:

mount /mnt/cdrom

c. Execute your web browser to view the **Start\_Here.htm** document using one of the following commands:

mozilla file:/mnt/cdrom/Start\_Here.htm

or

netscape file:/mnt/cdrom/Start\_Here.htm

- d. The SANsurfer Management Suite start page opens in your browser.
- 2. On the SANsurfer Management Suite start page, click the **SANbox Switch Software** button.
- 3. On the SANbox Switch Software page, scroll to the SANbox Series area.
- 4. In the Operating System column, click the **Linux** link.
- 5. Click the **SANsurfer Management Software** link to open the File Download dialog.
- 6. Enter a path name to save the **sansurfer\_linux\_install.bin** file, and click the **Save** button.
- Open a terminal window for the directory in which the sansurfer\_linux\_install.bin file was saved, and make the file executable.

chmod +x sansurfer\_linux\_install.bin

8. Execute the install program and follow the installation instructions

./sansurfer\_linux\_install.bin

- 9. When the installation is complete, start SANsurfer Management Suite using the SANsurfer file in the installation directory. Click the Switch tab from the left pane to open SANsurfer Switch Manager. From the Help menu, select About ... and make note of the release version number. Close SANsurfer Management Suite.
- 10. To ensure that you are using the most recent version of SANsurfer Switch Manager, visit the QLogic support web page and go to Drivers, Software and Manuals.
  - a. Select your switch model from the pull-down menu. Locate the description for SANsurfer Switch Manager for Linux under "Management Software".
  - If the release version number (5.00.xx) is greater than what is currently installed on your workstation, down load the new version and proceed to step 11. Otherwise, no upgrade is needed and the SMS installation is complete.
- 11. From the tar.gz file, extract the **SANsurferSwitchMgr\_Linux\_5.00.xx.bin** file and make the file executable.

```
chmod +x sansurferswitchmgr_linux_5.00.xx.bin
```

12. Execute the install program and follow the installation instructions.

./sansurferswitchmgr\_linux\_5.00.xx.bin

- When prompted for an installation directory, click the Choose button and select the same folder as the SANsurfer Management Suite installation in step 9. The default SMS installation directory is /opt/QLogic\_Corporation/SANsurfer.
- 14. Enter the following script command from the installation directory:

./chglax

15. Start SANsurfer Switch Manager from SANsurfer Management suite as you did in step 9 and confirm that the new version is running.

## 4.2.5.2.3 SMS Installation for Solaris

To install the SANsurfer Switch Manager application on Solaris from the SANsurfer Management Suite CD-ROM, do the following:

- 1. Insert the SANsurfer Management Suite Disk into the management workstation CD-ROM drive. If the SANsurfer Management Suite start page does not open in your default browser, do the following:
  - a. Right-click the Workspace Menu.
  - b. Select File, then select File Manager.
  - c. In File Manager, double-click the CD-ROM folder, and then double-click the Sansurfer folder.
  - d. In the Sansurfer folder, double-click the **Start\_Here.htm** file to open the SANsurfer Management Suite start page in your default browser.
- 2. On the SANsurfer Management Suite start page, click the **SANbox Switch Software** button.
- 3. On the SANbox Switch Software page, scroll to the SANbox Series area.
- 4. In the Operating System column, click the **Solaris SPARC** link.
- 5. Click the **SANsurfer Management Software** link to open the Save As dialog.
- 6. Enter a path name to save the **sansurfer\_solaris\_install.bin** file and click the **Save** button.
- Open a terminal window for the directory in which the sansurfer\_solaris\_install.bin file was saved, and enter the following:

```
chmod +x sansurfer_solaris_install.bin
```

8. Execute the install program and follow the installation instructions:

./sansurfer\_solaris\_install.bin

9. When the installation is complete, start SANsurfer Management Suite using the SANsurfer file in the installation directory. Click the Switch tab from the left pane to open SANsurfer Switch Manager. From the Help menu, select About ... and make note of the release version number. Close SANsurfer Management Suite.

- 10. To ensure that you are using the most recent version of SANsurfer Switch Manager, visit the QLogic support web page and go to Drivers, Software and Manuals.
  - a. Select your switch model from the pull-down menu. Locate the description for SANsurfer Switch Manager for Linux under "Management Software".
  - b. If the release version number (5.00.xx) is greater than what is currently installed on your workstation, down load the new version. Otherwise, no upgrade is needed.
- Open the tar file and save the SANsurferSwitchMgr\_QLGCsol\_5.00.xx.bin file in a folder and make the file executable.
  - # chmod +x sansurferswitchmgr\_QLGCsol\_5.00.xx
- 12. Install the new SANsurfer Switch Manager package:
  - # pkgadd -d sansurferswitchmgr\_QLGCsol\_5.00.xx
- 13. Change directories to the package location:
  - # cd /usr/opt/QLGCsol/bin
- 14. Locate and execute the file **sbm\_over\_sms.sh**:

# ./sbm\_over\_sms.sh

- When prompted for the SMS installation directory, enter d if SMS was installed in it's default directory (/opt/QLogic\_Corporation/SANsurfer). Otherwise, enter the path name for the SMS installation directory. The script will copy the necessary files to the specified installation directory.
- 16. Start SANsurfer Switch Manager from SANsurfer Management suite as you did in step 9 and confirm that the new version is running.

#### 4.2.6

## Start SANsurfer Switch Manager

You can start SANsurfer Switch Manager as a standalone application or from SANsurfer Management Suite.

**NOTE:** After the switch is operational, you can also open the SANsurfer Switch Manager web applet, by entering the switch IP address in an internet browser. If your workstation does not have the Java 2 Run Time Environment program, you will be prompted to download it.



- To start SANsurfer Switch Manager as a standalone application, do the following.
  - 1. Start the SANsurfer Switch Manager using one of the following methods:
    - For Windows, double-click the SANsurfer Switch Manager shortcut, or select SANsurfer Switch Manager from Start menu, depending on how you installed the SANsurfer Switch Manager application. From a command line, you can enter the SANsurfer\_Switch\_Manager command:

<install\_directory>SANsurfer\_Switch\_Manager.exe

□ For Linux, Solaris, or Mac OS X, enter the SANsurfer\_Switch\_Manager command:

<install\_directory>./SANsurfer\_Switch\_Manager

- 2. In the Initial Start dialog, click the **Open Configuration Wizard** button. When you power up the switch, the Configuration Wizard will recognize the switch and lead you through the configuration process.
- To start SANsurfer Switch Manager from SANsurfer Management Suite, do the following.
  - 1. Start the SANsurfer Management Suite application using one of the following methods:
    - For Windows, double-click the SANsurfer shortcut, or select SANsurfer from Start menu, depending on how you installed the SANsurfer application. From a command line, enter the following command:

<install\_directory>\SANsurfer.exe

**G** For Linux or Solaris enter the SANsurfer command:

<install\_directory>./SANsurfer

- 2. From the SANsurfer Management Suite home page, click the SANsurfer Switch Manager button.
- 3. In the Initial Start dialog, click the **Open Configuration Wizard** button. When you power up the switch, the Configuration Wizard will recognize the switch and lead you through the configuration process.

### 4.2.7 Connect the Switch to AC Power

**WARNING!!** This product is supplied with a 3-wire power cable and plug for the user's safety. Use this power cable in conjunction with a properly grounded outlet to avoid electrical shock. An electrical outlet that is not correctly wired could place hazardous voltage on metal parts of the switch chassis. It is the responsibility of the customer to ensure that the outlet is correctly wired and grounded to prevent electrical shock.

You may require a different power cable in some countries because the plug on the cable supplied with the equipment will not fit your electrical outlet. In this case, you must supply your own power cable. The cable you use must meet the following requirements:

■ For 125 Volt electrical service, the cable must be rated at 10 Amps and be approved by UL and CSA.

■ For 250 Volt electrical service: The cable must be rated at 10 Amps, meet the requirements of H05VV-F, and be approved by VDE, SEMKO, and DEMKO.

#### **AVERTISSEMENT!!**

Pour la sécurité de l'utilisateur, l'appareil est livré avec un câble d'alimentation trifilaire et une fiche. Pour éviter toute secousse électrique, enficher ce câble à une prise correctement mise à la terre.Une prise électrique dont les fils sont mal branchés peut créer une tension dangereuse dans les pièces métalliques du châssis switch. Pour éviter toute secousse électrique, s'assurer que les fils sont correctement branchés et que la prise est bien mise à la terre.

Dans certains pays les prises électriques sont de modèle différent; on ne peut y enficher le câble de l'appareil. On doit donc en utiliser un autre ayant les caractéristiques suivantes:

Alimentation 125 V: Câble pour courant nominal de 10 A, agréé LAC et CSA.

Alimentation 250 V: Câble pour courant nominal de 10 A, conforme au H05VV-F, et agréé VDE, SEMKO et DEMKO.

#### WARNUNG!!

Dieses Produkt wird mit einem 3-adrigen Netzkabel mit Stecker geliefert. Dieses Kabel erfüllt die Sicherheitsanforderungen und sollte an einer vorschriftsmäßigen Schukosteckdose angeschlossen werden, um die Gefahr eines elektrischen Schlages zu vermeiden.Elektrosteckdosen, die nicht richtig verdrahtet sind, können gefährliche Hochspannung an den Metallteilen des switch-Gehäuses verursachen. Der Kunde trägt die Verantwortung für eine vorschriftsmäßige Verdrahtung und Erdung der Steckdose zur Vermeidung eines elektrischen Schlages.

In manchen Ländern ist eventuell die Verwendung eines anderen Kabels erforderlich, da der Stecker des mitgelieferten Kabels nicht in die landesüblichen Steckdosen paßt. In diesem Fall müssen Sie sich ein Kabel besorgen, daß die folgenden Anforderungen erfüllt:

■ Für 125 Volt-Netze: 10 Ampere Kabel mit UL- und CSA-Zulassung.

■ Für 250 Volt-Netze: 10 Ampere Kabel gemäß den Anforderungen der H05VV-F und VDE-, SEMKO- und DEMKO-Zulassung.

To power up a SANbox 5200 Series switch, do the following:

- For a model 5200 switch, connect the power cord to the AC power receptacle on the front of the switch chassis and to a grounded AC outlet.
- For a model 5202 switch, connect the power cords to the power supply receptacles on the back of the switch chassis and to a grounded AC outlet. To provide redundancy in the event of an AC power circuit failure, connect the switch power supplies to separate AC circuits.

The switch responds in the following sequence:

- 1. The chassis LEDs (Input Power, Heartbeat, System Fault) illuminate followed by all port Logged-In LEDs. The Logged-In LEDs that illuminate indicate the ports that are enabled by the current license key.
- 2. After a couple seconds the System Fault LED is extinguished while the Input Power LED and Heartbeat LED remain illuminated.
- 3. After approximately one minute, the POST executes and the Heartbeat LED is extinguished.
- 4. After about another minute, the POST is complete, all LEDs are extinguished except the Input Power LED and the Heartbeat LED:
  - The Input Power LED remains illuminated indicating that the switch logic circuitry is receiving DC voltage. If not, contact your authorized maintenance provider.
  - The Heartbeat LED indicates the results of the POST. The POST tests the condition of firmware, memories, data-paths, and switch logic circuitry. If the Heartbeat LED blinks steadily about once per second, the POST was successful, and you can continue with the installation process. Any other blink pattern indicates that an error has occurred. Refer to "Heartbeat LED Blink Patterns" on page 5-3 for more information about error blink patterns.



# 4.2.8 Configure the Switch

You can configure the switch using the SANsurfer Switch Manager application or the command line interface. To configure the switch using SANsurfer Switch Manager, click the **Open Configuration Wizard** radio button in the Initial Start dialog, then click the **Proceed** button. The Configuration wizard explains and prompts you for the following configuration information:

Temporary IP address	
Temporary subnet mask	
Archive template file	
Switch domain ID (1239)	
Domain ID Lock (Locked/Unlocked)	
Switch name	
Permanent IP address	
Permanent subnet mask	
Permanent gateway address	
Permanent network discovery method	
Date and time	
Admin account password	
Create a configuration archive?	

**NOTE:** Refer to Table B-9 through Table B-16 for information on factory configuration default values.

To configure the switch using the command line interface, do the following:

- 1. Open a command window according to the type of workstation and connection:
  - Ethernet (all platforms): Open a Telnet session with the default switch IP address and log in to the switch with default account name and password (admin/password).

```
telnet 10.0.0.1
Switch Login: admin
Password: ******
```

- Serial Windows: Open the HyperTerminal application on a Windows platform.
  - a. Choose the **Start** button, select **Programs**, **Accessories**, **HyperTerminal**, and **HyperTerminal**.
  - b. Select the connection you created earlier and choose the **OK** button.
- Serial Linux: Open a command window and enter the following command:

minicom

Serial – Solaris: Open a command window and enter the following command:

tip sanbox2

2. Open an admin session and enter the Set Setup System command. Enter the values you want for switch IP address (Eth0NetworkAddress) and the network mask (Eth0NetworkMask). Refer to "Set Setup Command" on page B-80 for more information about this command.

> SANbox #> admin start SANbox (admin) #> set setup system

3. Open a Config Edit session and use the Set Config command to modify the switch configuration. Refer to the "Config Command" on page B-16 and "Set Config Command" on page B-61 for more information.



#### 4.2.9 Cable Devices to the Switch

Connect cables to the SFP transceivers and their corresponding devices, and then energize the devices. Device host bus adapters can have SFP (or SFF) transceivers or GigaBit Interface Converters (GBIC). LC-type duplex fiber optic cable connectors are designed for SFP transceivers, while SC-type connectors are designed for GBICs. Duplex cable connectors are keyed to ensure proper orientation. Choose the fiber optic cable with the connector combination that matches the device host bus adapter.

GL\_Ports self configure as FL\_Ports when connected to loop of public devices or F\_Ports when connected to a single device. G\_Ports self configure as F\_Ports when connected to single public devices. Both GL\_Ports and G\_Ports self configure as E\_Ports when connected to another switch.

#### <sup>4.3</sup> Install Firmware

The switch comes with current firmware installed. You can upgrade the firmware from the management workstation as new firmware becomes available. You can use the SANsurfer Switch Manager application or the CLI to install new firmware.

- **NOTE:** You can load and activate version 5.0 firmware on an operating switch without disrupting data traffic or having to re-initialize attached devices. If you attempt to perform a non-disruptive activation without satisfying the following conditions, the switch will perform a disruptive activation:
  - The current firmware version is a 4.x version that precedes the upgrade version.
  - No changes are being made to switches in the fabric including powering up, powering down, disconnecting or connecting ISLs, and switch configuration changes.
  - No port in the fabric is in the diagnostic state.
  - No zoning changes are being made in the fabric.
  - No changes are being made to attached devices including powering up, powering down, disconnecting, connecting, and HBA configuration changes.

Ports that are stable when the non-disruptive activation begins, then change states, will be reset. When the non-disruptive activation is complete, SANsurfer Switch Manager sessions reconnect automatically. However, Telnet sessions must be restarted manually.

# 4.3.1 Using SANsurfer Switch Manager to Install Firmware

To install firmware using SANsurfer Switch Manager, do the following:

- 1. Select a switch in the topology display and double-click to open the Faceplate display. Open the Switch menu and select **Load Firmware**.
- 2. In the Firmware Upload window, click the **Select** button to browse and select the firmware file to be uploaded.
- 3. Click the **Start** button to begin the firmware load process. You will be shown a message warning you that the switch will be reset to activate the firmware.
- 4. Click the **OK** button to continue firmware installation or click the **Cancel** button to cancel the firmware installation. SANsurfer Switch Manager will attempt a hot reset, if possible, to activate the firmware without disrupting data traffic. During a non-disruptive activation, all Logged-In LEDs are extinguished for several seconds. If a non-disruptive activation is not possible, SANsurfer Switch Manager gives you the opportunity to reset the switch and perform a disruptive activation.



# 4.3.2 Using the CLI to Install Firmware

To install firmware using the CLI when a File Transfer Protocol (FTP) server is present on the management workstation, use the Firmware Install command. This command downloads the firmware from a remote host, installs the firmware, and performs a disruptive firmware activation. Refer to the "Firmware Install Command" on page B-24 for more information.

1. Enter the following command to download the firmware from a remote host to the switch, install the firmware, then reset the switch to activate the firmware.

SANbox (admin) #> firmware install

Warning: Installing new firmware requires a switch reset. Continuing with this action will terminate all management sessions, including any Telnet sessions. When the firmware activation is complete, you may log in to the switch again.

Do you want to continue? [y/n]: y

Press 'q' and the ENTER key to abort this command.

2. Enter your account name on the remote host and the IP address of the remote host. When prompted for the source file name, enter the path for the firmware image file.

User Account : johndoe IP Address : 10.20.20.200 Source Filename : 4.0.2.00.04\_mpc

3. When prompted to install the new firmware, enter Yes to continue or No to cancel. This is the last opportunity to cancel.

About to install image. Do you want to continue? [y/n] y Connected to 10.20.20.200 (10.20.20.200).

220 localhost.localdomain FTP server (Version wu-2.6.1-18) ready.

4. Enter the password for your account name. The firmware will now be downloaded from the remote host to the switch, installed, and activated.

331 Password required for johndoe. Password:\*\*\*\*\* 230 User johndoe logged in.

## <sup>4.4</sup> Upgrading the SANbox 5200 Series Switch

The SANbox 5200 Series product can come from the factory as an 8-, 12-, 16-, or 20-port switch, enabling ports 0-7, 0-11, 0-15, or 0-19 respectively. Ports 0-15 are capable of 1-Gbps/2-Gbps; ports 16–19 are capable of 10-Gbps. You can upgrade the SANbox 5200 Series switch to enable additional ports up to the 20-port maximum through the use of a license key. To purchase a license key, contact your switch distributor or authorized reseller.

Upgrading a switch is not disruptive and does not require a switch reset. To upgrade a switch using SANsurfer Switch Manager, do the following:

- 1. Add a fabric with the IP address of the switch you want to upgrade.
- 2. Open the faceplate display for the switch you want to upgrade.
- 3. Open the Switch Menu and select **Features** to open the Feature Licenses dialog.
- 4. In the Feature Licenses dialog, click the **Add** button to open the Add License Key dialog.
- 5. In the Add License Key dialog, enter the license key in the Key field.
- 6. Click the **Get Description** button to display the upgrade description.
- 7. Click the **Add** button to upgrade the switch. Allow a minute or two for the upgrade to complete.

To upgrade a switch using the command line interface, refer to the "Feature Command" on page B-23.

## Section 5 Diagnostics/Troubleshooting

Diagnostic information about the switch is available through the chassis LEDs and the port LEDs. Diagnostic information is also available through the SANsurfer Switch Manager and CLI event logs and error displays. This section describes the following types of diagnostics:

- Chassis Diagnostics describes the Input Power LED and System Fault LED indications.
- Power-On Self Test Diagnostics describe the Heartbeat LED and the port Logged-In LED indications.
- Power Supply Diagnostics describes Power Supply Status LED and Power Supply Fault LED indications for model 5202 switches.

This section also describes how to use maintenance mode to recover a disabled switch.

#### 5.1 Chassis Diagnostics

Figure 5-1shows the chassis LEDs on a model 5200 switch; the model 5202 switch is similar. The chassis LEDs indicate chassis diagnostics.

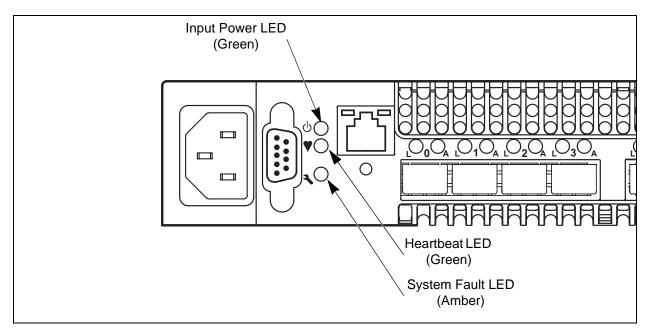


Figure 5-1. Chassis LEDs

The following conditions are described:

- Input Power LED Is Extinguished
- System Fault LED Is Illuminated

#### 5.1.1 Input Power LED Is Extinguished

The Input Power LED illuminates to indicate that the switch logic circuitry is receiving proper voltages. If the Input Power LED is extinguished, do the following:

- 1. Inspect the power cords and connectors. Is the cord unplugged? Is the cord or connector damaged?
  - Yes Make necessary corrections or repairs. If the condition remains, continue.
  - No Continue.
- 2. Inspect the AC power source. Is the power source delivering the proper voltage?
  - Yes Continue.
  - No Make necessary repairs.
    - □ For a model 5200 switch, if the condition remains, contact your authorized maintenance provider.
    - □ For a model 5202 switch, if the condition remains, continue.
- 3. Inspect the power supplies. Are the power supplies fully seated in their bays?
  - Yes Continue. Replace the power supplies.
  - No Reinstall the power supplies. If the condition remains, replace the power supplies.

## 5.1.2 System Fault LED Is Illuminated

The System Fault LED illuminates to indicate that a fault exists in the switch firmware or hardware. If the System Fault LED illuminates, do the following:

- Check the Heartbeat LED for an error blink pattern and take the necessary actions. Refer to "Heartbeat LED Blink Patterns" on page 5-3.
- For a model 5202 switch, check the power supply LEDs and take the necessary actions. Refer to "Power Supply Diagnostics" on page 5-11.



#### 5.2 Power-On Self Test Diagnostics

The switch performs a series of tests as part of its power-up procedure. The POST diagnostic program performs the following tests:

- Checksum tests on the boot firmware in PROM and the switch firmware in flash memory
- Internal data loopback test on all ports
- Access and integrity test on the ASIC

During the POST, the switch logs any errors encountered. Some POST errors are critical, others are not. The switch uses the Heartbeat LED and the Logged-In LED to indicate switch and port status. A critical error disables the switch so that it will not operate. A non-critical error allows the switch to operate, but disables the ports that have errors. Whether the problem is critical or not, contact your authorized maintenance provider.

If there are no errors, the Heartbeat LED blinks at a steady rate of once per second. If a critical error occurs, the Heartbeat LED will show an error blink pattern and the System Fault LED will illuminate. If there are non-critical errors, the switch disables the failed ports and flashes the associated Logged-In LEDs. Refer to "Heartbeat LED Blink Patterns" on page 5-3 for more information about Heartbeat LED blink patterns.

#### 5.2.1

## **Heartbeat LED Blink Patterns**

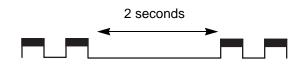
The Heartbeat LED indicates the operational status of the switch. When the POST completes with no errors, the Heartbeat LED blinks at steady rate of once per second. When the switch is in maintenance mode, the Heartbeat LED illuminates continuously. Refer to "Recovering a Switch" on page 5-12 for more information about maintenance mode. All other blink patterns indicate critical errors. In addition to producing a Heartbeat error blink patterns, a critical error also illuminates the System Fault LED.

The Heartbeat LED shows an error blink pattern for the following conditions:

- 2 blinks Internal Firmware Failure Blink Pattern
- 3 blinks System Error Blink Pattern
- 4 blinks Configuration File System Error Blink Pattern
- 5 blinks Over Temperature Blink Pattern

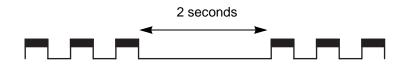
#### 5.2.1.1 Internal Firmware Failure Blink Pattern

An internal firmware failure blink pattern is 2 blinks followed by a two second pause. The 2-blink error pattern indicates that the firmware has failed, and that the switch must be reset. Momentarily press and release the Maintenance button to reset the switch.



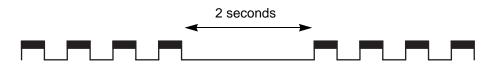
# 5.2.1.2 System Error Blink Pattern

A system error blink pattern is 3 blinks followed by a two second pause. The 3-blink error pattern indicates that a POST failure or a system error has left the switch inoperable. If a system error occurs, contact your authorized maintenance provider. Momentarily press and release the Maintenance button to reset the switch.



## 5.2.1.3 Configuration File System Error Blink Pattern

A configuration file system error blink pattern is 4 blinks followed by a two second pause. The 4-blink error pattern indicates that a configuration file system error has occurred, and that the configuration file must be recreated. Refer to "Recovering a Switch" on page 5-12 for more information.



To recreate the configuration file, do the following:

**<u>CAUTION!</u>** Recreating the configuration file will delete all switch configuration settings.

- 1. Place the switch in maintenance mode. Press and hold the Maintenance button for 2–7 seconds. Refer to "Recovering a Switch" on page 5-12 for more information about placing the switch in maintenance mode.
- 2. Establish a Telnet session using the default IP address 10.0.0.1.

telnet 10.0.0.1

3. Enter the account name (prom) and password (prom), and press the Enter key.

Switch login: prom Password:xxxx

- 4. The following menu is displayed. Enter "6" (Remake Filesystem) and press the Enter key to recreate the configuration file.
  - 0) Exit
  - 1) Image Unpack
  - 2) Reset Network Config
  - 3) Reset User Accounts to Default
  - 4) Copy Log Files
  - 5) Remove Switch Config
  - 6) Remake Filesystem
  - 7) Reset Switch
  - 8) Update Boot Loader
  - Option: 6
- 5. When the recreate process is complete, select option 7 to reset the switch and exit maintenance mode.
- 6. If a previously saved configuration file is available for the switch, do the following to restore the configuration file.
  - a. Establish communications with the switch using the File Transfer Protocol (FTP). Enter the following on the command line:

>ftp 10.0.0.1

b. Enter the following account name and password:

user:images

password:images

c. Activate binary mode and copy the configuration file from the workstation to the switch. The configuration file must be named "configdata".

ftp>bin

ftp>put configdata

d. Close the FTP session.

ftp>quit

e. Establish communications with the switch using Telnet. Enter one of the following on the command line:

```
telnet xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx
```

or

telnet *switchname* 

where *xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx* is the switch IP address and *switchname* is the switch name associated with the IP address.

- f. A Telnet window opens prompting you for a login. Enter an account name and password. The default account name and password are (admin, password).
- g. Open an admin session to acquire the necessary authority.

SANbox \$>admin start

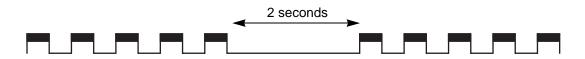
h. Restore the configuration file. When the restore is complete, the switch will reset.

SANbox (admin) \$>config restore

#### 5.2.1.4

## **Over Temperature Blink Pattern**

An over temperature blink pattern is 5 blinks followed by a two second pause. The 5-blink error pattern indicates that the air temperature inside the switch has exceeded the failure temperature threshold. The failure temperature threshold is 70° C.



If the Heartbeat LED shows the over temperature blink pattern, do the following:

- 1. Inspect the chassis vents. Are the intake and exhaust vents clear?
  - Yes Continue.
  - No Remove any debris from fan intake and exhaust if necessary. If the condition remains, continue.
- 2. For a model 5202 switch, inspect the Power Supply Fault LED on both power supplies; otherwise continue. Is the Power Supply Fault LED illuminated on either power supply?
  - Yes Replace the power supply. If the condition remains, continue.
  - No Continue.

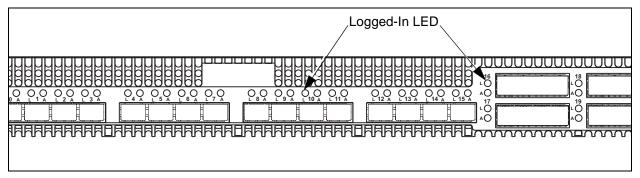


- 3. For a model 5202 switch, observe the air flow direction from both power supplies; otherwise continue. Are the flow directions the same?
  - Yes Continue.
  - No Determine the proper air flow direction for the switch. Replace the power supply with the incorrect air flow direction with another having the correct air flow direction. Air flow direction is marked on the power supply part number label. If the condition remains, continue.
- 4. Consider the ambient air temperature near the switch and clearance around the switch. Make necessary corrections. If the condition remains, open a command line window and log on to the switch. Enter the Shutdown command, then power down the switch. Contact your authorized maintenance provider.

## 5.2.2

## Logged-In LED Indications

Port diagnostics are indicated by the Logged-In LED for each port as shown in Figure 5-2.



### Figure 5-2. Logged-In LED

The Logged-In LED has three indications:

- Continuous illumination: A device is logged in to the port.
- Flashing once per second: A device is logging in to the port.
- Flashing twice per second: The port is down, offline, or an error has occurred.

If a Logged-In LED is flashing twice per second, review the event browser for alarm messages regarding the affected port. You can also inspect the alarm log using the Show Alarm command. If there is an error, alarm messages may point to one or more of the following conditions:

- E\_Port Isolation
- Excessive Port Errors

#### 5.2.2.1 E\_Port Isolation

A Logged-In LED error indication is often the result of E\_Port isolation. An isolated E\_Port is indicated by a red link in the SANsurfer Switch Manager topology display. E\_Port isolation can be caused by the following:

- Security failure
- FL\_Port is connected to another switch
- Conflicting domain IDs
- Conflicting timeout values
- Conflicting zone membership between active zone sets

Refer to the SANbox 5200 Series Switch Management User's Guide for information about how to change domain IDs, timeout values, and edit zoning.

Review the event browser and do the following to diagnose and correct an isolated E\_Port:

- 1. Does the event browser show an alarm about an invalid attach on the affected port?
  - Yes Review the ISL group in the active security set to ensure that the membership includes the necessary ports and that the secrets on all switches are correct.
  - No Continue.
- 2. Does the event browser show a repeating alarm about an unsupported E\_Port command on the affected port?
  - Yes The port is configured as an FL\_Port and connected to another switch. Correct the port connection or the port type.
  - No Continue.
- 3. Display the fabric domain IDs using the Show Domains command or the Switch data tab in the SANsurfer Switch Manager topology display. Are all domain IDs in the fabric unique?
  - Yes Continue.
  - No Correct the domain IDs on the offending switches using the Set Config Switch command or the SANsurfer Switch Manager Switch Properties window. Reset the port. If the condition remains, continue.



- 4. Compare the RA\_TOV and ED\_TOV timeout values for all switches in the fabric using the Show Config Switch command or the Switch data tab of the SANsurfer Switch Manager topology display. Is each timeout value the same on every switch?
  - Yes Continue.
  - No Correct the timeout values on the offending switches using the Set Config Switch command or the SANsurfer Switch Manager Switch Properties dialog. Reset the port. If the condition remains, continue.
- 5. Display the active zone set on each switch using the Zoning Active command or the Active Zoneset tab of the SANsurfer Switch Manager topology display. Compare the zone membership between the two active zone sets. Are they the same?
  - Yes Contact your authorized maintenance provider.
  - No Deactivate one of the active zone sets or edit the conflicting zones so that their membership is the same. Reset the port. If the condition remains, contact your authorized maintenance provider.
    - **NOTE:** This can be caused by merging two fabrics whose active zone sets have two zones with the same name, but different membership.

#### 5.2.2.2 Excessive Port Errors

The switch can monitor a set of port errors and generates alarms based on user-defined sample windows and thresholds. These port errors include the following:

- CRC errors
- Decode errors
- ISL connection count
- Login errors
- Logout errors
- Loss-of-signal errors

Port threshold alarm monitoring is disabled by default. Refer to the *SANbox 5200* Series Switch Management User's Guide for information about managing port threshold alarms.

If the count for any of these errors exceeds the rising trigger for three consecutive sample windows, the switch generates an alarm and disables the affected port, changing its operational state to "down". Port errors can be caused by the following:

- Triggers are too low or the sample window is too small
- Faulty Fibre Channel port cable
- Faulty SFP
- Faulty port
- Fault device or HBA

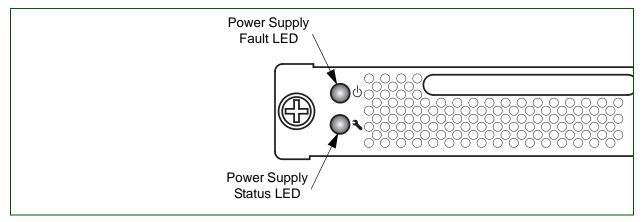
Review the event browser to determine if excessive port errors are responsible for disabling the port. Look for a message that mentions one of the monitored error types indicating that the port has been disabled, then do the following:

- Examine the alarm configuration for the associated error using the Show Config Threshold command or the SANsurfer Switch Manager application. Refer to the "Show Config Command" on page B-105. Refer to Table B-11 for a list of the alarm configuration defaults. Are the thresholds and sample window correct?
  - Yes Continue
  - No Correct the alarm configuration. If the condition remains, continue.
- 2. Reset the port, then perform an external port loopback test to validate the port and the SFP. Refer to the "Test Command" on page B-120 or the *SANbox 5200 Series Switch Management User's Guide* for information about testing ports. Does the port pass the test?
  - Yes Continue
  - No Replace the SFP and repeat the test. If the port does not pass the test, contact your authorized maintenance provider. Otherwise continue.
- 3. Replace the Fibre Channel port cable. Is the problem corrected?
  - Yes Complete.
  - No Continue.
- 4. Inspect the device to which the affected port is connected and confirm that the device and its HBA are working properly. Make repairs and corrections as needed. If the condition remains, contact your authorized maintenance provider.



## 5.3 Power Supply Diagnostics

A model 5202 switch power supply has a Status LED (Green) and a Fault LED (Amber) as shown in Figure 5-3. Under normal operating conditions, the Power Supply Status LED is illuminated and the Power Supply Fault LED is extinguished.



#### Figure 5-3. Model 5202 Switch Power Supply LEDs

Consider the following indications:

- Power Supply Fault LED is illuminated. This means that the power supply is failing or has failed. Replace the power supply with another having the same air flow direction. Air flow direction is indicated on the power supply part number label. Refer to "Power Supply Removal and Replacement" on page 6-2.
- All power supply LEDs are normal, yet the System Fault LED is illuminated and the Heartbeat LED does not show a blink pattern. This means that the two power supplies have different air flow directions. Replace the power supply with the incorrect air flow direction with another having the correct air flow direction. Air flow direction is marked on the power supply part number label. Refer to "Power Supply Removal and Replacement" on page 6-2.

## 5.4 Recovering a Switch

A switch can become inoperable or unmanageable for the following reasons:

- Firmware becomes corrupt
- IP address is lost
- Switch configuration becomes corrupt
- Forgotten password

In these specific cases, you can recover the switch using maintenance mode. Maintenance mode temporarily returns the switch IP address to 10.0.0.1 and provides opportunities to do the following:

- Unpack a firmware image file
- Restore the network configuration parameters to the default values
- Remove all user accounts and restore the Admin account name password to the default.
- Copy the log file
- Restore factory defaults for all but user accounts and zoning
- Restore all switch configuration parameters to the factory default values
- Reset the switch
- Update the system boot loader

To recover a switch, do the following:

- 1. Place the switch in maintenance mode. Press and hold the Maintenance button with a pointed tool for 2–7 seconds. When the Heartbeat LED alone is illuminated, release the button.
- 2. Allow one minute for the switch to complete its tests. When the switch is in maintenance mode, the Heartbeat LED illuminates continuously. All other chassis LEDs are extinguished.
- 3. Establish a Telnet session with the switch using the maintenance mode IP address 10.0.0.1.
- 4. Enter the maintenance mode account name and password (prom, prom), and press the Enter key.

Switch login: prom Password:xxxx



- 5. The maintenance menu displays several recovery options. To select a switch recovery option, press the corresponding number (displayed in option: field) on the keyboard and press the Enter key.
  - 0) Exit
  - 1) Image Unpack
  - 2) Reset Network Config
  - 3) Reset User Accounts to Default
  - 4) Copy Log Files
  - 5) Remove Switch Config
  - 6) Remake Filesystem
  - 7) Reset Switch
  - 8) Update Boot Loader
  - Option:

These options and their use are described in the following subsections.

#### 5.4.1 Maintenance – Exit

This option closes the current login session. To log in again, enter the maintenance mode account name and password (prom, prom). To return to normal operation, momentarily press and release the Maintenance button or power cycle the switch.

## 5.4.2

### Maintenance – Image Unpack

This option unpacks and installs new firmware when the current firmware has become corrupt. Before using this option, you must load the new firmware image file onto the switch. The steps to install new firmware using this option are as follows:

- 1. Place the switch in maintenance mode. Refer to the procedure for maintenance mode in "Recovering a Switch" on page 5-12.
- 2. Use FTP to load a new firmware image file onto the switch. Refer to "Image Command" on page B-37 for an example of how to load the image file using FTP. Close the FTP session.
- 3. Establish a Telnet session with the switch using the default IP address 10.0.0.1.

telnet 10.0.0.1

4. Enter the maintenance mode account name and password (prom, prom), and press the Enter key.

Switch login: prom Password:xxxx 5. Select option 1 from the maintenance menu. When prompted for a file name prompt, enter the firmware image file name.

```
Image filename: filename
Unpacking 'filename', please wait...
Unpackage successful.
```

6. Select option 7 to reset the switch and exit maintenance mode.

#### 5.4.3

## Maintenance – Reset Network Config

This option resets the network properties to the factory default values and saves them on the switch. Refer to Table B-26 for the default network configuration values.

#### 5.4.4

## Maintenance – Reset User Accounts to Default

This option restores the password for the Admin account name to the default (password) and removes all other user accounts from the switch.

#### 5.4.5

## Maintenance – Copy Log Files

This option copies all log file buffers to a file on the switch named *logfile*. You can use FTP to download this file to the management workstation. You must download the logfile before resetting the switch.

#### 5.4.6

## Maintenance – Remove Switch Config

This option deletes all configurations from the switch except the default configuration. This restores switch configuration parameters to the factory defaults except for user accounts and zoning. Refer to Table B-9 though Table B-16 for the factory default values.

#### 5.4.7

### Maintenance – Remake Filesystem

In the event of a loss of power, the switch configuration may become corrupt. The file system on which the configuration is stored must be re-created. This option resets the switch to the factory default values including user accounts and zoning. Refer to Table B-9 though Table B-16 for the factory default values.

<u>CAUTION!</u> If you choose the **Remake Filesystem** option, you will lose all changes made to the fabric configuration that involve that switch, such as password and zoning changes. You must then restore the switch from an archived configuration or reconfigure the portions of the fabric that involve the switch.



# 5.4.8 Maintenance – Reset Switch

This option closes the Telnet session, exits maintenance mode and reboots the switch using the current switch configuration. All unpacked firmware image files that reside on the switch are deleted.

# 5.4.9

# Maintenance – Update Boot Loader

This option updates the system boot loader which loads the Linux kernel into memory. Use this option only at the direction of your authorized maintenance provider.



Notes

# Section 6 Removal/Replacement

This section describes the removal and replacement procedures for the following field replaceable units (FRU):

- SFP transceivers
- Power supplies for model 5202 switches

The switch is equipped with a battery that powers the non-volatile memory. This memory stores the switch configuration. The battery is not a field replaceable unit.

**WARNING!!** Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer. Dispose of the used battery according to the manufacturer's instructions.

## WARNUNG!!

Bei unsachgemäß ausgetauschter Batterie besteht Explosionsgefahr. Die Batterie nur mit der gleichen Batterie oder mit einem äquivalenten, vom Hersteller empfohlenen Batterietyp ersetzen. Die gebrauchte Batterie gemäß den Herstelleranweisungen entsorgen.

## **AVERTISSEMENT!!**

Danger d'explosion si le remplacement de la pile est incorrect. Ne remplacer que par une pile de type identique ou équivalent recommandé par le fabricant. Jeter la pile usagée en observant les instructions du fabricant.

# <sup>6.1</sup> SFP Transceiver Removal and Replacement

The SFP transceivers can be removed and replaced while the switch is operating without damaging the switch or the transceiver. However, transmission on the affected port will be interrupted until the transceiver installed.

To remove a transceiver, gently press the transceiver into the port to release the tension, then pull on the release tab or lever and remove the transceiver. Different transceiver manufacturers have different release mechanisms. Consult the documentation for your transceiver. To install, insert the transceiver into the port and gently press until it snaps in place.

# 6.2 Power Supply Removal and Replacement

The power supplies are hot pluggable. This means you can remove or install one of the power supplies while the switch is operating without disrupting service. The power supplies are also interchangeable; that is, the left and right power supplies are the same unit.

**<u>CAUTION!</u>** Both power supplies must have the same air flow direction to prevent the switch from overheating.

■ To avoid overheating, do not operate the switch with one power supply any longer than necessary.

When removing or replacing a power supply, consider the following:

- The left and right power supplies are interchangeable. However, you must orient the power supply so that AC receptacle is on the right.
- Both power supplies must have the same air flow direction. The part number label on the power supply indicates the air flow direction.
- When removing or replacing a power supply on an operating switch, be sure the Heartbeat LED is showing the normal 1 blink per second. This allows the switch to correctly report power supply status.

**NOTE:** The SFP transceiver will fit only one way. If the SFP does not install under gentle pressure, flip it over and try again.



To remove a power supply, unplug the power supply and loosen the two knurled fasteners with a cross-head screw driver as shown in Figure 6-1. Grasp the power supply handle and pull firmly to disengage the modular connector. Slide the power supply out of its bay.

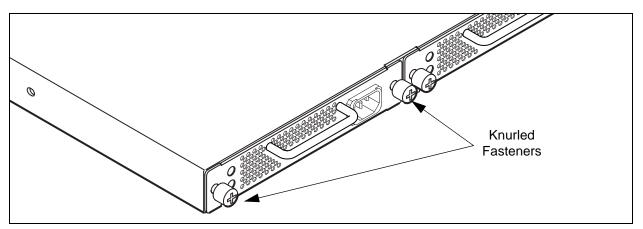


Figure 6-1. Power Supply Removal

- 1. Confirm that the Heartbeat LED is showing the normal 1 blink per second. This allows the switch to correctly report power supply status.
- 2. Confirm that the new power supply is compatible with the switch air flow direction. The part number label on the power supply indicates the air flow direction as shown in Figure 6-2.
- 3. With the AC receptacle on the right, slide the power supply into the bay until it is firmly seated. Secure the knurled fasteners by hand.
- 4. Plug the power cord into the AC receptacle and confirm that the air flow is correct.

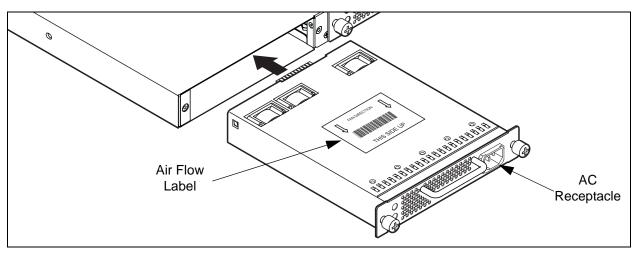


Figure 6-2. Power Supply Installation



Notes

# Appendix A Specifications

This appendix contains the specifications for the SANbox 5200 Series Fibre Channel switch. Refer to Section 2 General Description for the location of all connections, switches, controls, and components.

# A.1 Fabric Specifications

Fibre Channel Protocols	FC-PH Rev. 4.3 FC-PH-2 FC-PH-3 FC-AL Rev 4.6 FC-AL-2 Rev 7.0 FC-FLA FC-GS FC-GS-2 FC-GS-3 FC-FG FC-Tape FC-VI FC-SW-2 Fibre Channel Element MIB RFC 2837 Fibre Alliance MIB Version 4.0
Fibre Channel Classes of Service	Classes 2 and 3
Modes of Operation	Fibre Channel Classes 2 and 3, connectionless
Port Types ■ 1-Gbps/2-Gbps Ports	G_Port, GL_Port, F_Port, FL_Port, E_Port
10-Gbps Ports	G_Port, F_Port, E_Port
Port Characteristics	All ports are auto-discovering and self-configuring.

Number of Fibre Channel Ports	<ul> <li>Variable and can be upgraded in the following configurations:</li> <li>8 1-Gbps/2-Gbps FC ports</li> <li>12 1-Gbps/2-Gbps FC ports</li> <li>16 1-Gbps/2-Gbps FC ports</li> <li>16 1-Gbps/2-Gbps FC ports plus 4 10-Gbps FC ports</li> </ul>	
Scalability	Maximum 239 switches depending on configuration	
Maximum User Ports	> 475,000 ports depending on configuration	
Buffer Credits	16 buffer credits per port, ASIC embedded memory	
Media Type Ports 0-15 Ports 16-19		
Fabric Port Speed Ports 0-15 Ports 16-19		
Maximum Frame Size	2148 bytes (2112 byte payload)	
System Processor	200 MHz Motorola® 8245 PowerPc®	
Fabric Latency (intra-switch) 1-Gbps to 1-Gbps 2-Gbps to 2-Gbps 10-Gbps to 10-Gbps	< 0.4 µsec	
Bandwidth Point-to-Point	106 MB, Full Duplex @ 1-Gbps 212 MB, Full Duplex @ 2-Gbps 1275 MB, Full Duplex @ 10-Gbps	
Aggregate (single switch)	Up to 8.492 GB Full Duplex	

# A.2 Maintainability

Diagnostics	Power-On Self Test (POST) tests all functional components except SFP transceivers. Port tests include online, internal, and external tests.
User Interface	LED indicators
Field Replaceable Units	Power supplies (model 5202 only)

# A.3 Fabric Management

Management Methods	SANsurfer Switch Manager Graphical User Interface Application Programming Interface Command Line Interface GS-3 Management Server SNMP FTP
Maintenance Connection	RS-232 connector; null modem F/F DB9 cable
Ethernet Connection	RJ-45 connector; 10/100 BASE-T cable
Switch Agent	Allows a network management station to obtain configuration values, traffic information, and failure data pertaining to the Fibre Channels using SNMP through the Ethernet interface.

# A.4 Dimensions

	Model 5200	Model 5202
Width Height Depth	1.70" (43.2 mm) (1U)	17" (432 mm), 19" rack 1.70" (43.2 mm) (1U) 19.69" (500 mm)
Weight	9 lbs (4.08 Kg)	16 lbs (7.25 Kg)

# <sup>A.5</sup> Electrical

Operating voltage	100 to 240 VAC; 50 to 60 Hz
Power source loading (maximum)	1 A at 120 VAC 0.5 A at 240 VAC
Heat Output (maximum)	100 watts
Circuit Protection	Internally fused

# A.6 Environmental

Temperature ■ Operating ■ Non-operating	
Humidity ■ Operating ■ Non-operating	
Altitude ■ Operating ■ Non-operating	
	IEC 68-2 5-500 Hz, random, 0.21 G rms, 10 minutes 5-500 Hz, random, 2.09 G rms, 10 minutes
Shock ■ Operating ■ Non-operating	IEC 68-2 4 g, 11ms, 20 repetitions 30g, 292 ips, 3 repetitions, 3 axis
Air flow	Front-to-back

# A.7 Regulatory Certifications

Safety Standards	UL60950:2000 CSA 22.2 No. 60950-00 (Canada) EN60950:2000 (EC) CB Scheme-IEC 60950:1999
Emissions Standards	FCC Part 15B Class A ICES-03 Issue 3 VCCI Class A ITE CISPR 22, Class A EN 55022, Class A
Voltage Fluctuations	EN 61000-3-3
Harmonics	EN 61000-3-2
Immunity	EN 55024:1998
Marking	FCC Part 15 UL <sub>us</sub> (United States) TUV <sub>us</sub> (United States) cUL (Canada) cTUV (Canada) TUV Europe (Germany) VCCI CE



Notes

# Appendix B Command Line Interface

The command line interface (CLI) enables you to perform a variety of fabric and switch management tasks through an Ethernet or a serial port connection. This section describes the following:

- Logging On to a Switch
- User Accounts
- Working with Switch Configurations
- Commands

# **Logging On to a Switch**

To log on to a switch using Telnet, open a command line window on the workstation and enter the Telnet command followed by the switch IP address:

# telnet ip\_address

A Telnet window opens prompting you for a login. Enter an account name and password.

To log on to a switch through the serial port, configure the workstation port with the following settings:

- 9600 baud
- 8-bit character
- 1 stop bit
- No parity

Enter an account name and password when prompted.

## B.2 User Accounts

Switches come from the factory with the following user account already defined:

Account name: admin Password: password Authority: Admin

This user account provides full access to the switch and its configuration. After planning your fabric management needs and creating your own user accounts, consider changing the password for this account.

- Refer to "Commands" on page B-6 for information about authority levels.
- Refer to the "User Command" on page B-124 for information about creating user accounts.
- Refer to "Passwd Command" on page B-41 for information about changing passwords.
- **NOTE:** A switch supports a combined maximum of 19 logins or sessions reserved as follows:
  - 4 logins or sessions for internal applications such as management server and SNMP
  - 9 high priority Telnet sessions
  - 6 logins or sessions for SANsurfer Switch Manager inband and out-of-band logins, Application Programming Interface (API) inband and out-of-band logins, and Telnet logins. Additional logins will be refused.

# B.3

# Working with Switch Configurations

Successful management of switches and fabrics with the command line interface depends on the effective use of switch configurations. Modifying configurations, backing up configurations, and restoring configurations are key switch management tasks.



## **B.3.1 Modifying a Configuration**

A switch supports up to 10 configurations including the default configuration. Each switch configuration contains switch, port, port threshold alarm, and zoning configuration components. The Show Switch command displays the name of the active configuration. A configuration name can have up to 31 characters excluding the pound symbol (#), semicolon (;), and comma (,). By editing the latest configuration and saving the results under a new name, you can create a history of configuration changes. Use the Config List command to display the configurations stored on the switch

SANbox #> config list Current list of configurations -----default config\_10132003

To modify a switch configuration you must open an Admin session with the Admin Start command. An Admin session prevents other accounts from making changes at the same time either through Telnet or SANsurfer Switch Manager. You must also open a Config Edit session with the Config Edit command and indicate which configuration you want to modify. If you do not specify a configuration name the active configuration is assumed. The Config Edit session provides access to the Set Config commands with which you make modifications to the port, switch, port threshold alarm, or zoning configuration components as shown:

SANbox #> admin start
SANbox (admin) #> config edit default
The config named default is being edited.
SANbox (admin-config)#> set config port . . .
SANbox (admin-config)#> set config switch . . .
SANbox (admin-config)#> set config threshold . . .
SANbox (admin-config)#> set config zoning . . .

The Config Save command saves the changes you made during the Config Edit session. In this case, changes to the configuration named *Default* are being saved to a new configuration named *config\_10132003*. However, the new configuration does not take effect until you activate it with the Config Activate command:

SANbox (admin-config)#> config save config\_10132003
SANbox (admin)#> config activate config\_10132003
SANbox (admin)#> admin end

The Admin End command releases the Admin session for other administrators when you are done making changes to the switch.

# **B.3.2** Backing up and Restoring Switch Configurations

Backing up and restoring a configuration is useful to protect your work or for use as a template in configuring other switches. The Config Backup command creates a file on the switch, named *configdata*. This file can be used to restore a switch configuration only from the command line interface; it cannot be used to restore a switch using SANsurfer Switch Manager.

```
SANbox #> admin start
SANbox (admin) #> config backup
```

The *configdata* file contains all of the switch configuration information including the following:

- All named switch configurations including the default configuration. This includes port, switch, port threshold alarm, and zoning configuration components.
- All SNMP and network information defined with the Set Setup command.
- The zoning database included all zone sets, zones, and aliases

You use FTP to download the *configdata* file to your workstation for safe keeping and to upload the file back to the switch for the restore function. To download the configdata file, open an FTP session on the switch and login with the account name *images* and password *images*. Transfer the file in binary mode with the Get command as shown:

```
>ftp ip_address
user:images
password: images
ftp>bin
ftp>get configdata
        xxxxx bytes sent in xx secs.
ftp>quit
```

You should rename the *configdata* file on your workstation with the switch name and date, *config\_switch\_169\_10112003*, for example.

The restore operation begins with FTP to upload the configuration file from the workstation to the switch, then finishes with a Telnet session and the Config Restore command. To upload the configuration file, *config\_switch\_169\_10112003* in this case, open and FTP session with account name *images* and password *images*. Transfer the file in binary mode with the Put command as shown:

```
ftp ip_address
user:images
password: images
ftp> bin
ftp> put config_switch_169_10112003 configdata
  Local file config_switch_169_10112003
  Remote file configdata
ftp>quit
```

The restore process replaces all configuration information on the switch and afterwards the switch is automatically reset. If the restore process changes the IP address, all management sessions are terminated. Use the Set Setup System command to return the IP configuration to the values you want. Refer to the "Set Setup Command" on page B-80. To restore the switch, open a Telnet session, then enter the Config Restore command from within an Admin session as shown:

```
SANbox #> admin start
SANbox (admin) #> config restore
The switch will be reset after restoring the configuration.
Please confirm (y/n): [n] y
```



# B.4 Commands

The command syntax is as follows:

command <u>key</u>word keyword [value] keyword [value1] [value2]

The **Command** is followed by one or more keywords. Consider the following rules and conventions:

- Commands and keywords are case insensitive.
- Required keyword values appear in standard font: [value]. Optional values are shown in italics: [value].
- Underlined portions of the keyword in the command format indicate the abbreviated form that can be used. For example the <u>Del</u>ete keyword can be abbreviated Del.

The command-line completion feature makes entering and repeating commands easier. Table B-1 describes the command-line completion keystrokes.

Keystroke	Effect
Tab	Completes the command line. Enter at least one character and press the tab key to complete the command line. If more than one possibility exists, press the Tab key again to display all possibilities.
Up Arrow	Scrolls backward through the list of previously entered commands.
Down Arrow	Scrolls forward through the list of previously entered commands.
Control-A	Moves the cursor to the beginning of the command line
Control-E	Moves the cursor to the end of the command line.

Table B-1. Command-Line Completion

The command set performs monitoring and configuration tasks. Commands related to monitoring tasks are available to all account names. Commands related to configuration tasks are available only within an admin session. An account must have Admin authority to enter the Admin Start command, which opens an admin session. Refer to the "Admin Command" on page B-8.

The commands and their page numbers are listed in Table B-2.

Monitorin	g Commands	Configuratio	on Command
Help	(B-34)	Admin	(B-8)
History Ping	(B-35) (B-42)	Admin Sessio	on Commands
Ps Quit Show Config Show Log Show Perf Show Setup Uptime Whoami	(B-43) (B-44) (B-90) (B-105) (B-109) (B-112) (B-115) (B-123) (B-127)	Alias <sup>1</sup> CIM <sup>1</sup> CIMListener CIMSubscription Config <sup>1</sup> Create Date <sup>1</sup> Feature <sup>1</sup> Firmware Install Group <sup>1</sup> Hardreset Hotreset Image Lip Passwd Reset Security Securityset <sup>1</sup> Set Set Config Set Log Set Port <sup>1</sup> Set Setup Shutdown Test User <sup>1</sup> <sup>2</sup> Zoneset <sup>1</sup> Zoneset <sup>1</sup>	(B-9) (B-11) (B-12) (B-14) (B-16) (B-19) (B-22) (B-23) (B-23) (B-24) (B-25) (B-33) (B-36) (B-37) (B-40) (B-37) (B-40) (B-41) (B-41) (B-45) (B-53) (B-53) (B-57) (B-59) (B-61) (B-74) (B-78) (B-78) (B-78) (B-78) (B-120) (B-124) (B-128) (B-132) (B-134)

# Table B-2. Commands Listed by Authority Level

<sup>1</sup>Some keywords do not require an Admin session.

<sup>2</sup> Some keywords can be executed only by the Admin account name.

# Admin Command

Opens and closes an Admin session. The Admin session provides commands that change the fabric and switch configurations. Only one Admin session can be open on the switch at any time. An inactive Admin session will time out after a period of time which can be changed using the Set Setup System command. Refer to the "Set Setup Command" on page B-80.

Authority	Admin
Syntax	admin

**admin** start (or begin) end (or stop) cancel

Keywordsstart (or begin)Opens the admin session.

## end (or stop)

Closes the admin session. The Hardreset, Hotreset, Logout, Shutdown, and Reset Switch commands will also end an admin session.

#### cancel

Terminates an Admin session opened by another user. Use this keyword with care because it terminates the Admin session without warning the other user and without saving pending changes.

- **Notes** Closing a Telnet window during an admin session does not release the session. In this case, you must either wait for the admin session to time out, or use the Admin Cancel command.
- **Examples** The following example shows how to open and close an Admin session:

```
SANbox (admin) #>
.
.
.
SANbox (admin) #> admin end
SANbox #>
```

SANbox #> admin start



# Alias Command

Creates a named set of ports/devices. Aliases make it easier to assign a set of ports/devices to many zones. An alias can not have a zone or another alias as a member.

Authority Admin session for all keywords except List and Members

Syntax alias

add [alias] [member\_list] copy [alias\_source] [alias\_destination] create [alias] delete [alias] list members [alias] remove [alias] [member\_list] rename [alias\_old] [alias\_new]

# Keywords add [alias] [member\_list]

Specifies one or more ports/devices given by [member\_list] to add to the alias named [alias]. Use a <space> to delimit ports/devices in [member\_list]. An alias can have a maximum of 2000 members. A port/device in [member\_list] can have any of the following formats:

- Domain ID and port number pair (Domain ID, Port Number). Domain IDs can be 1–-239; port numbers can be 0–-255.
- 6-character hexadecimal device Fibre Channel address (hex)
- 16-character hexadecimal worldwide port name (WWPN) with the format xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx.

The application verifies that the [alias] format is correct, but does not validate that such a port/device exists.

## copy [alias\_source] [alias\_destination]

Creates a new alias named [alias\_destination] and copies the membership into it from the alias given by [alias\_source].

## create [alias]

Creates an alias with the name given by [alias]. An alias name must begin with a letter and be no longer than 64 characters. Valid characters are 0-9, A-Z, a-z, \_, \$, ^, and -. The zoning database supports a maximum of 256 aliases.

## delete [alias]

Deletes the specified alias given by [alias] from the zoning database. If the alias is a member of the active zone set, the alias will not be removed from the active zone set until the active zone set is deactivated.

## list

Displays a list of all aliases. This keyword does not require an admin session.

# members [alias]

Displays all members of the alias given by [alias]. This keyword does not require an admin session.

## remove [alias] [member\_list]

Removes the ports/devices given by [member\_list] from the alias given by [alias]. Use a <space> to delimit ports/devices in [member\_list]. A port/device in [member\_list] can have any of the following formats:

- Domain ID and port number pair (Domain ID, Port Number). Domain IDs can be 1–-239; port numbers can be 0–-255.
- 6-character hexadecimal device Fibre Channel address (hex)
- 16-character hexadecimal worldwide port name (WWPN) for the device with the format xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx.

## rename [alias\_old] [alias\_new]

Renames the alias given by [alias\_old] to the alias given by [alias\_new].



# **CIM Command**

Manages CIM listener and subscription configurations on the switch. Refer to the "CIMListener Command" on page B-12 for information about creating and modifying CIM listeners. Refer to the "CIMSubscription Command" on page B-14 for information about creating and modifying CIM subscriptions.

Authority Admin session

cim

#### Syntax

cancel clear edit limits save

#### Keywords cancel

Terminates the current CIM edit session without saving changes that were made.

#### clear

Clears all CIM listener and subscription configurations from the switch.

#### edit

Opens a CIM edit session.

#### limits

Displays the maximum allowed number of CIM listeners, subscriptions, and subscriptions per listener. This keyword does not require an Admin session nor a CIM edit session.

#### save

Saves all changes made during the current CIM edit session.

#### **Examples** The following is an example of the CIM Edit command:

```
SANbox (admin) #> cim edit
SANbox (admin-cim) #> cimlistener create CIM_listener_1
.
.
.
SANbox (admin-cim) #> cim save
```

#### The following is an example of the CIM Limits command:

SANbox #> cim limits

Cim Attribute	Maximum
MaxListeners	32
MaxSubscriptions	50
MaxSubscriptionsPerListener	б

# **CIMListener Command**

Configures CIM indication service listeners and adds subscriptions to listeners. Refer to the "CIMSubscription Command" on page B-14 for information about configuring subscriptions.

Authority Admin session and a CIM Edit session. Refer to the "CIM Command" on page B-11 for information about opening a CIM edit session.

## Syntax cimlistener add [listener\_name] [subscription\_list] create [listener\_name] delete [listener\_name] edit [listener\_name]

# Keywords add [listener\_name] [subscription\_list] Adds the set of subscriptions given by [subscription\_list] to the listener given by [listener\_name]. Use a <space> to delimit subscription names in [subscription\_list].

# create [listener\_name]

Prompts you in a line-by-line fashion to create a CIM listener with the name given by [listener\_name]. [listener\_name] can have up to 32 characters: 0-9, A-Z, a-z, \_, \$, ^, and -. The CIM listener configuration parameters are described in Table B-3.

Parameter	Description
Name	Listener name
Туре	<ul> <li>Listener type:</li> <li>Permanent – Send indications to the CIM client whether a connection can be established or not. This is the default.</li> <li>Transient – Sends indications to the CIM client, but ceases if a connection cannot be established after 60 minutes.</li> </ul>
URL	IP address of the CIM client and the port number to which to send indications. The default is 10.0.0.1:5000.

# Table B-3. CIM Listener Configuration Parameters

# delete [listener\_name]

Deletes the listener given by [listener\_name] from the CIM database.

## edit [listener\_name]

Opens an editing session in which you can modify the CIM listener given by [listener\_name]. Refer to Table B-3 for a description of the CIM listener configuration parameters.

#### **Examples** The following is an example of the CIMListener Create command:

SANbox (admin-cim) #> cimlistener create listener\_1

A list of attributes with formatting and current values will follow. Enter a new value or simply press the ENTER key to accept the current value. If you wish to terminate this process before reaching the end of the list press 'q' or 'Q' and the ENTER key to do so.

Name listener\_1 Type (2=Permanent, 3=Transient) [Permanent ] URL (IP address:port format) [10.0.0.1:5000]

Finished configuring attributes.

This configuration must be saved with the cim save command before it can take effect, or to discard this configuration use the cim cancel command.

# **CIMSubscription Command**

Creates, edits, or removes CIM subscriptions.

Authority Admin session and a CIM Edit session. Refer to the "CIM Command" on page B-11 for information about opening a CIM edit session.

Syntax cimsubscription

create [subscription\_name] delete [subscription\_name] edit [subscription\_name]

## **Keywords** create [subscription\_name] Prompts you in a line-by-line fashion to create a CIM subscription with the name given by [subscription\_name]. [subscription\_name] can have up to 32 characters: 0-9, A-Z, a-z, \_, \$, ^, and -. Table B-4 describes the CIM subscription configuration

parameters.

Parameter	Description	
Name	Subscription name.	
FilterID	<ul> <li>Event type for which the switch monitors and sends an indication to the CIM client. The event types are as follows:</li> <li>CreateComputerSystem – A switch is added to the fabric. This is the default.</li> <li>ModifyComputerSystem – A switch state change.</li> <li>DeleteComputerSystem – A switch is removed from the fabric.</li> <li>CreateFCPort – Not supported.</li> <li>ModifyFCPort – A Fibre Channel port state change.</li> <li>DeleteFCPort – Not supported.</li> </ul>	
EnabledState	Enable (True) or disable (False) the subscription. The default is True.	
Duration	Subscription life span in seconds. The subscription life span begins when the subscription is created. Expired subscriptions do not send indications to the CIM client though they remain in the CIM database. Values can be 1–720000. 0 indicates indefinite, which is the default.	

## Table B-4. CIM Subscription Configuration Parameters

## delete [subscription\_name]

Deletes the subscription given by [subscription\_name] from the CIM database.

# edit [subscription\_name]

Opens an editing session in which you can modify the CIM subscription given by [subscription\_name]. Refer to Table B-4 for a description of the CIM subscription configuration parameters.

## **Examples** The following is an example of the CIMSubscription Create command:

SANbox (admin-cim) #> cimsubscription create subscription\_1

A list of attributes with formatting and current values will follow. Enter a new value or simply press the ENTER key to accept the current value. If you wish to terminate this process before reaching the end of the list press 'q' or 'Q' and the ENTER key to do so.

FilterID values: 1 = Create:ComputerSystem
2 = Modify:ComputerSystem
3 = Delete:ComputerSystem
4 = Create:FCPort
5 = Modify:FCPort
6 = Delete:FCPort

Name	subscription_1		
FilterID	(see allowed options above)	[Create:ComputerSystem	n ]
EnabledState	(True / False)	[True	]
Duration	(decimal value, 0-720000 secs, 0=forever)	[0]	]

Finished configuring attributes.

This configuration must be saved with the cim save command before it can take effect, or to discard this configuration use the cim cancel command.

# **Config Command**

Manages the Fibre Channel configurations on a switch. For information about setting the port and switch configurations, refer to the "Set Config Command" on page B-61.

Authority Admin session for all keywords except List

## Syntax config

<u>act</u>ivate [config\_name] backup cancel copy [config\_source] [config\_destination] <u>del</u>ete [config\_name] edit [config\_name] list restore save [config\_name]

# Keywords <u>activate [config\_name]</u>

Activates the configuration given by [config\_name]. If you omit [config\_name], the currently active configuration is used. Only one configuration can be active at a time.

## backup

Creates a file named *configdata*, which contains the system configuration information. To download this file, open an FTP session, log in with account name/password of "images" for both, and type "get configdata". Refer to "Backing up and Restoring Switch Configurations" on page B-4.

#### cancel

Terminates the current configuration edit session without saving changes that were made.

## copy [config\_source] [config\_destination]

Copies the configuration given by [config\_source] to the configuration given by [config\_destination]. The switch supports up to 10 configurations including the default configuration.

## delete [config\_name]

Deletes the configuration given by [config\_name] from the switch. You cannot delete the default configuration (Default Config) nor the active configuration.

#### edit [config\_name]

Opens an edit session for the configuration given by [config\_name]. If you omit [config\_name], the currently active configuration is used.

## list

Displays a list of all available configurations on the switch. This keyword does not require an admin session.



## restore

Restores configuration settings to an out-of-band switch from a backup file named *configdata*, which must be first uploaded on the switch using FTP. You create the backup file using the Config Backup command. Use FTP to load the backup file on a switch, then enter the Config Restore command. After the restore is complete, the switch automatically resets. Refer to "Backing up and Restoring Switch Configurations" on page B-4.

- NOTE: If the restore process changes the IP address, all management sessions are terminated. Use the Set Setup System command to return the IP configuration to the values you want. Refer to the "Set Setup Command" on page B-80.
  - Configuration archive files created with the SANsurfer Switch Manager Archive function are not compatible with the Config Restore command.

#### save [config\_name]

Saves changes made during a configuration edit session in the configuration given by [config\_name]. If you omit [config\_name], the value for [config\_name] you chose for the most recent Config Edit command is used. [config\_name] can be up to 31 characters excluding #, semicolon (;), and comma (,). The switch supports up to 10 configurations including the default configuration.

- **Notes** If you edit the active configuration, changes will be held in suspense until you reactivate the configuration or activate another configuration.
- **Examples** The following shows an example of how to open and close a Config Edit session:

```
SANbox #> admin start
SANbox (admin) #> config edit
The config named default is being edited.
.
.
SANbox (admin-config) #> config cancel
Configuration mode will be canceled. Please confirm (y/n): [n] y
SANbox (admin) #> admin end
```

The following is an example of how to create a backup file (configdata) and download the file to the workstation.

SANbox #> admin start
SANbox (admin) #> config backup
SANbox (admin) #> admin end
SANbox #> exit
#>ftp symbolic\_name or ip\_address
user: images
password: images
ftp> bin
ftp> get configdata
ftp> quit

The following is an example of how to upload a configuration backup file (configdata) from the workstation to the switch, and then restore the configuration.

```
#> ftp symbolic_name or ip_address
user: images
password: images
ftp> bin
ftp> put configdata
ftp> quit
SANbox #> admin start
SANbox (admin) #> config restore
The switch will be reset after restoring the configuration.
 Please confirm (y/n): [n] y
 Alarm Msg: [day month date time year][A1005.0021][SM][Configuration is being
restored - this could take several minutes !]
 Alarm Msg: [day month date time year][Al000.000A][SM][The switch will be reset in
3 seconds due to a config restore]
SANbox (admin) #>
  Alarm Msg: [day month date time year][A1000.0005][SM][The switch is being reset]
Good bye.
```



# Create Command

Creates support files for troubleshooting switch problems, and certificates for secure communications for SANsurfer Switch Manager.

- Authority Admin session
- Syntax create

certificate support

#### Keywords certificate

Creates a security certificate on the switch. The security certificate is required to establish an SSL connection with a management application such as SANsurfer Switch Manager. The certificate is valid 24 hours before the certificate creation date and expires 365 days after the creation date. Should the current certificate become invalid, use the Create Certificate command to create a new one.

- **NOTE:** To insure the creation of a valid certificate, be sure that the switch and the workstation time and date are the same. Refer to the following:
  - "Date Command" on page B-22 for information about setting the time and date
  - "Set Command" on page B-59 (Timezone keyword) for information about setting the time zone on the switch and workstation
  - "Set Setup Command" on page B-80 (System keyword) for information about enabling the Network Time Protocol for synchronizing the time and date on the switch and workstation from an NTP server.

#### support

Assembles all log files and switch memory data into a core dump file (dump\_support.tgz) on the switch. If your workstation has an FTP server, you can proceed with the command prompts to send the file from the switch to a remote host. Otherwise, you can use FTP to download the support file from the switch to your workstation. The support file is useful to technical support personnel for troubleshooting switch problems. Use this command when directed by your authorized maintenance provider.

The following is an example of the Create Support command when an FTP server is available on the workstation:

```
SANbox (admin) #> create support
Log Msg:[Creating the support file - this will take several seconds]
FTP the dump support file to another machine? (y/n): y
Enter IP Address of remote computer: 10.20.33.130
Login name: johndoe
Enter remote directory name: bin/support
```



Would you like to continue downloading support file? (y/n) [n]: y Connected to 10.20.33.130 (10.20.33.130). 220 localhost.localdomain FTP server (Version wu-2.6.1-18) ready. 331 Password required for johndoe. Password: xxxxxxx 230 User johndoe logged in. cd bin/support 250 CWD command successful. lcd /itasca/conf/images Local directory now /itasca/conf/images bin 200 Type set to I. put dump\_support.tgz local: dump\_support.tgz remote: dump\_support.tgz 227 Entering Passive Mode (10,20,33,130,232,133) 150 Opening BINARY mode data connection for dump\_support.tgz. 226 Transfer complete. 43430 bytes sent in 0.292 secs (1.5e+02 Kbytes/sec) Remote system type is UNIX. Using binary mode to transfer files. 221-You have transferred 43430 bytes in 1 files. 221-Total traffic for this session was 43888 bytes in 1 transfers. 221 Thank you for using the FTP service on localhost.localdomain.

The following is an example of the Create Support command and how to download the support file to your workstation. When prompted to send the support file to another machine, decline, then close the Telnet session. Open an FTP session on the switch and log in with the account name *images* and password *images*. Transfer the dump\_support.tgz file in binary mode with the Get command.

```
SANbox (admin) #> create support
Log Msg:[Creating the support file - this will take several seconds]
FTP the dump support file to another machine? (y/n): n
SANbox (admin) #> quit
>ftp switch_ip_address
user: images
password: images
ftp>bin
ftp>get dump_support.tgz
    xxxxx bytes sent in xx secs.
ftp>quit
```



# The following is an example of the Create Certificate command:

SANbox (admin) #> create certificate

The current date and time is day mon date hh:mm:ss UTC yyyy.

This is the time used to stamp onto the certificate.

Is the date and time correct? (y/n): [n] y

Certificate generation successful.

# Date Command

This command displays or sets the system date and time. To set the date and time the information string must be provided in this format: MMDDhhmmCCYY. The new date and time takes effect immediately. Authority Admin session except to display the date. **Syntax** date [MMDDhhmmCCYY] **Keywords** [MMDDhhmmCCYY] Specifies the date - this requires an admin session. If you omit [MMDDhhmmCCYY], the current date is displayed which does not require an admin session. Notes Network Time Protocol (NTP) must be disabled to set the time with the Date command. Refer to the "Set Setup Command" on page B-80, System keyword, for information about NTP. When setting the date and time on a switch that is enabled for SSL connections, the switch time must be within 24 hours of the workstation time. Otherwise, the connection will fail. Examples The following is an example of the Date command: SANbox #> date Mon Apr 07 07:51:24 2003



# **Feature Command**

	Adds license key features to the switch and displays the license key feature log. To order a license key contact your switch distributor or your authorized reseller. Upgrading a switch is not disruptive, nor does it require a switch reset.
Authority	Admin session for Add keyword only
Syntax	feature add [license_key] log
Keywords	add [license_key] Adds the feature that corresponds to the value given by [license_key]. [license_key] is case insensitive.
	<b>log</b> Displays a list of installed license key features.
Notes	SANbox 5200 Series switches can be upgraded to 12-, 16-, or 20- port configurations.
Examples	The following is an example of the Feature Add command:
	SANbox #> admin start
	SANbox (admin) #> feature add 1-LCVXOWUNOJBE6
	License upgrade to 20 ports
	Once the feature has been added the switch will be reset.
	Do you want to continue with license upgrade procedure? (y/n): [n] y Alarm Msg:[day mon date time year][A1005.0030][SM][Upgrading Licensed Ports to 20]
	The following is an example of the Feature Log command:

SANbox #> feature log Mfg Feature Log:

# Firmware Install Command

Downloads firmware from a remote host to the switch, installs the firmware, then resets the switch (without a power-on self test) to activate the firmware. This reset is disruptive. To perform a non-disruptive firmware installation, refer to the "Image Command" on page B-37.

The command prompts you for the following:

- IP address of the remote host
- An account name and password on the remote host
- Pathname for the firmware image file

## Authority Admin Syntax firmware install Examples The following is an example of the Firmware Install command: SANbox (admin) #> firmware install Warning: Installing new firmware requires a switch reset. Continuing with this action will terminate all management sessions, including any Telnet sessions. When the firmware activation is complete, you may log in to the switch again. Do you want to continue? [y/n]: y Press 'q' and the ENTER key to abort this command. : johndoe User Account IP Address : 10.20.33.130 Source Filename : 5.0.00.11\_mpc About to install image. Do you want to continue? [y/n] yConnected to 10.20.33.130 (10.20.33.130). 220 localhost.localdomain FTP server (Version wu-2.6.1-18) ready. 331 Password required for johndoe. Password: xxxxxxxx 230 User johndoe logged in. bin 200 Type set to I. verbose Verbose mode off. This may take several seconds... The switch will now reset. Connection closed by foreign host.



# **Group Command**

Creates groups, manages membership within the group, and manages the membership of groups in security sets.

Authority Admin session and a Security Edit session. Refer to the "Security Command" on page B-53 for information about starting a Security Edit session. The List, Members, Securitysets, and Type keywords are available without an Admin session.

## Syntax group add [group] copy create [group] [type] delete [group] edit [group] [member] list members [group] remove [group] [member\_list] rename [group\_old] [group\_new] securitysets [group] type [group]

# Keywords add [group]

Initiates an editing session in which to specify a group member and its attributes for the existing group given by [group]. ISL, Port, and MS member attributes are described in Table B-5, Table B-6, and Table B-7 respectively. The group name and group type attributes are read-only fields common to all three tables.

Attribute	Description
Member	Worldwide name of the switch that would attach to the switch. A member cannot belong to more than one group.
Authentication	Enables (CHAP) or disables (None) authentication using the Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol (CHAP). The default is None.
Primary Hash	The preferred hash function to use to decipher the encrypted Primary Secret sent by the ISL member. The hash functions are MD5 or SHA-1. If the ISL member does not support the Primary Hash, the switch will use the Secondary Hash.
Primary Secret	<ul> <li>Hexadecimal string that is encrypted by the Primary Hash for authentication with the ISL group member. The string has the following lengths depending on the Primary Hash function:</li> <li>MD5 hash: 16-byte</li> <li>SHA-1 hash: 20-byte</li> </ul>
Secondary Hash	Hash function to use to decipher the encrypted Secondary Secret sent by the ISL group member. Hash values are MD5 or SHA-1. The Secondary Hash is used when the Primary Hash is not available on the ISL group member. The Primary Hash and the Secondary Hash cannot be the same.
Secondary Secret	<ul> <li>Hex string that is encrypted by the Secondary Hash and sent for authentication. The string has the following lengths depending on the Secondary Hash function:</li> <li>MD5 hash: 16-byte</li> <li>SHA-1 hash: 20-byte</li> </ul>
Binding	Domain ID of the switch to which to bind the ISL group member worldwide name. This option is available only if FabricBindingEnabled is set to True using the Set Config Security command. Refer to the "Set Config Command" on page B-61. 0 (zero) specifies no binding.

Table B-5.	ISL	Group	Member	Attributes
		0.040		/

Attribute	Description
Member	Port worldwide name for the N_Port device that would attach to the switch. A member cannot belong to more than one group.
Authentication	Enables (CHAP) or disables (None) authentication using the Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol (CHAP). The default is None.
Primary Hash	The preferred hash function to use to decipher the encrypted Primary Secret sent by the Port group member. The hash functions are MD5 or SHA-1. If the Port group member does not support the Primary Hash, the switch will use the Secondary Hash.
Primary Secret	<ul> <li>Hexadecimal string that is encrypted by the Primary Hash for authentication with the Port group member. The string has the following lengths depending on the Primary Hash function:</li> <li>MD5 hash: 16-byte</li> <li>SHA-1 hash: 20-byte</li> </ul>
Secondary Hash	Hash function to use to decipher the encrypted Secondary Secret sent by the Port group member. Hash values are MD5 or SHA-1. The Secondary Hash is used when the Primary Hash is not available on the Port group member. The Primary Hash and the Secondary Hash cannot be the same.
Secondary Secret	<ul> <li>Hex string that is encrypted by the Secondary Hash and sent for authentication. The string has the following lengths depending on the Secondary Hash function:</li> <li>MD5 hash: 16-byte</li> <li>SHA-1 hash: 20-byte</li> </ul>

Table B-6. Port Group Member Attributes

Table B-7. MS Group Member Attributes	

Attribute	Description
Member	Port worldwide name for the N_Port device that would attach to the switch.
CTAuthentication	Common Transport (CT) authentication. Enables (True) or disables (False) authentication for MS group members. The default is False.
Hash	The hash function to use to decipher the encrypted Secret sent by the MS group member. Hash values are MD5 or SHA-1.
Secret	<ul> <li>Hexadecimal string that is encrypted by the Hash function for authentication with MS group members. The string has the following lengths depending on the Hash function:</li> <li>MD5 hash: 16-byte</li> <li>SHA-1 hash: 20-byte</li> </ul>

# copy [group\_source] [group\_destination]

Creates a new group named [group\_destination] and copies the membership into it from the group given by [group\_source].

## create [group] [type]

Creates a group with the name given by [group] with the type given by [type]. A group name must begin with a letter and be no longer than 64 characters. Valid characters are 0-9, A-Z, a-z, \_, \$, ^, and -. The security database supports a maximum of 16 groups. If you omit [type], ISL is used. [type] can be one of the following:

ISL

Configures security for attachments to other switches.

Port

Configures security for attachments to N\_Port devices.

MS

Configures security for attachments to N\_Port devices that are issuing management server commands.



# edit [group] [member]

Initiates an editing session in which to change the attributes of a worldwide name given by [member] in a group given by [group]. Member attributes that can be changed are described in Table B-8:

Attribute	Description
Authentication (ISL and Port Groups)	Enables (CHAP) or disables (None) authentication using the Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol (CHAP).
CTAuthentication (MS Groups)	CT authentication. Enables (True) or disables (False) authentication for MS group members. The default is False.
Primary Hash (ISL and Port Groups)	The preferred hash function to use to decipher the encrypted Primary Secret sent by the member. The hash functions are MD5 or SHA-1. If the member does not support the Primary Hash, the switch will use the Secondary Hash.
Hash (MS Groups)	The hash function to use to decipher the encrypted Secret sent by the MS group member. Hash values are MD5 or SHA-1.
Primary Secret (ISL and Port Groups)	<ul> <li>Hexadecimal string that is encrypted by the Primary Hash for authentication with the member. The string has the following lengths depending on the Primary Hash function:</li> <li>MD5 hash: 16-byte</li> <li>SHA-1 hash: 20-byte</li> </ul>
Secondary Hash (ISL and Port Groups)	Hash function to use to decipher the encrypted Secondary Secret sent by the group member. Hash values are MD5 or SHA-1. The Secondary Hash is used when the Primary Hash is not available on the group member. The Primary Hash and the Secondary Hash cannot be the same.
Secondary Secret (ISL and Port Groups)	<ul> <li>Hex string that is encrypted by the Secondary Hash and sent for authentication. The string has the following lengths depending on the Secondary Hash function:</li> <li>MD5 hash: 16-byte</li> <li>SHA-1 hash: 20-byte</li> </ul>

Attribute	Description
Secret (MS Groups)	<ul> <li>Hexadecimal string that is encrypted by the Hash function for authentication with MS group members. The string has the following lengths depending on the Hash function:</li> <li>MD5 hash: 16-byte</li> <li>SHA-1 hash: 20-byte</li> </ul>
Binding (ISL Groups)	Domain ID of the switch to which to bind the ISL group member worldwide name. This option is available only if FabricBindingEnabled is set to True using the Set Config Security command. Refer to the "Set Config Command" on page B-61. 0 (zero) specifies no binding.

Table B-8. Group Member Attributes (Continued)

### list

Displays a list of all groups and the security sets of which they are members. This keyword is available without an Admin session.

### members [group]

Displays all members of the group given by [group]. This keyword is available without an Admin session.

### remove [group] [member\_list]

Remove the port/device worldwide name given by [member] from the group given by [group]. Use a <space> to delimit multiple member names in [member\_list]

### rename [group\_old] [group\_new]

Renames the group given by [group\_old] to the group given by [group\_new].

## securitysets [group]

Displays the list of security sets of which the group given by [group] is a member. This keyword is available without an Admin session.

## type [group]

Displays the group type for the group given by [group]. This keyword is available without an Admin session.

**Notes** Refer to the "Securityset Command" on page B-57 for information about managing groups in security sets.

]

]

### **Examples** The following is an example of the Group Add command:

SANbox (admin-security) #> group add Group\_1

A list of attributes with formatting and default values will follow Enter a new value or simply press the ENTER key to accept the current value with exception of the Group Member WWN field which is mandatory. If you wish to terminate this process before reaching the end of the list press 'q' or 'Q' and the ENTER key to do so.					
Group Name	Group_1				
Group Type	ISL				
Member	(WWN)	[00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00]			
Authentication	(None / Chap)	[None ]			
PrimaryHash	(MD5 / SHA-1)	[MD5 ]			
PrimarySecret	(32 hex or 16 ASCII char value)	[ ]			
SecondaryHash	(MD5 / SHA-1 / None)	[None ]			
	Enter a new value with exception of If you wish to press 'q' or 'Q Group Name Group Type Member Authentication PrimaryHash PrimarySecret	Enter a new value or simply press the ENTER key with exception of the Group Member WWN field whi If you wish to terminate this process before rea press 'q' or 'Q' and the ENTER key to do so. Group Name Group_1 Group Type ISL Member (WWN) Authentication (None / Chap) PrimaryHash (MD5 / SHA-1) PrimarySecret (32 hex or 16 ASCII char value)			

SecondarySecret	(40 hex or 20 ASCII char value)	[
Binding	(domain ID 1-239, 0=None)	[0]

Finished configuring attributes. To discard this configuration use the security cancel command.

#### The following is an example of the Group Edit command:

SANbox (admin-security) #> group edit Gl 10:00:00:c0:dd:00:90:a3
A list of attributes with formatting and current values will follow.
Enter a new value or simply press the ENTER key to accept the current value.
If you wish to terminate this process before reaching the end of the list
press 'q' or 'Q' and the ENTER key to do so.
Group Name gl
Group Type ISL

Group Member	10:00:00:c0:dd:00:90:a3		
Authentication	(None / Chap)	[None]	chap
PrimaryHash	(MD5 / SHA-1)	[MD5 ]	sha-1
PrimarySecret	(40 hex or 20 ASCII char value)	[ ]	12345678901234567890
SecondaryHash	(MD5 / SHA-1 / None)	[None]	md5
SecondarySecret	(32 hex or 16 ASCII char value)	[ ]	1234567890123456
Binding	(domain ID 1-239, 0=None)	[3]	

Finished configuring attributes. To discard this configuration use the security cancel command.

The following is an example of the Group List command:

```
SANbox #> group list
Group SecuritySet
----- ------
group1 (ISL)
alpha
group2 (Port)
alpha
```

The following is an example of the Group Members command:

SANbox #> group members group1
Current list of members for Group: group1

-----

10:00:00:c0:dd:00:71:ed 10:00:00:c0:dd:00:72:45

10:00:00:c0:dd:00:90:ef

10:00:00:c0:dd:00:b8:b7



# Hardreset Command

Resets the switch and performs a power-on self test. This reset disrupts traffic, activates the pending firmware, and clears the alarm log. To save the alarm log before resetting, refer to the "Set Log Command" on page B-74.

Authority Admin session

### Syntax hardreset

**Notes** To reset the switch without a power-on self test, refer to the "Reset Command" on page B-45.

To reset the switch without disrupting traffic, refer to the "Hotreset Command" on page B-36.

# Help Command

Displays a brief description of the specified command, its keywords, and usage.

Authority None

Syntax help [command] [keyword]

## Keywords [command]

Displays a summary of the command given by [command] and its keywords. If you omit [command], the system displays all available commands.

### [keyword]

Displays a summary of the keyword given by [keyword] belonging to the command given by [command]. If you omit [keyword], the system displays the available keywords for the specified command.

### all

Displays a list of all available commands (including command variations).

### **Examples** The following is an example of the Help Config command:

SANbox #> help config config CONFIG\_OPTIONS The config command operates on configurations.

Usage: config	{ activate	e   backup	cancel	сору	delete	
	edit	list	restore	save }		

## The following is an example of the Help Config Edit command:

```
SANbox #> help config edit
config edit [CONFIG_NAME]
This command initiates a configuration session and places the current session
into config edit mode.
If CONFIG_NAME is given and it exists, it gets edited; otherwise, it gets
created. If it is not given, the currently active configuration is edited.
```

Admin mode is required for this command.

Usage: config edit [CONFIG\_NAME]



# **History Command**

Displays a numbered list of the previously entered commands from which you can re-execute selected commands.

Authority None

Syntax history

Notes

Use the History command to provide context for the ! command:

- Enter ![command\_string] to re-execute the most recent command that matches [command\_string].
- Enter ![line number] to re-execute the corresponding command from the History display
- Enter ![partial command string] to re-execute a command that matches the command string.
- Enter !! to re-execute the most recent command.

## **Examples** The following is an example of the History command:

port

setup

```
SANbox #> history
   1 show switch
   2 date
   3 help set
   4 history
SANbox #> !3
help set
set SET_OPTIONS
There are many attributes that can be set.
Type help with one of the following to get more information:
Usage: set { alarm | beacon | config | log | pagebreak |
```

| switch }

# **Hotreset Command**

Resets the switch for the purpose of activating the pending firmware without disrupting traffic. This command terminates all management sessions, saves all configuration information, and clears the event log. After the pending firmware is activated, the configuration is recovered. This process takes less than 80 seconds. To save the event log to a file before resetting, refer to the "Set Log Command" on page B-74.

Authority Admin session

# Syntax hotreset

- Notes
- You can load and activate version 5.0.x firmware on an operating switch without disrupting data traffic or having to re-initialize attached devices under the following conditions:
  - □ The current firmware version is a 4.0, 4.1, 4.2, or 5.x version that precedes the upgrade version.
  - No changes are being made to switches in the fabric including powering up, powering down, disconnecting or connecting ISLs, and switch configuration changes.
  - □ No port in the fabric is in the diagnostic state.
  - □ No zoning changes are being made in the fabric.
  - No changes are being made to attached devices including powering up, powering down, disconnecting, connecting, and HBA configuration changes.
- Ports that are stable when the non-disruptive activation begins, then change states, will be reset. When the non-disruptive activation is complete, SANsurfer Switch Manager sessions reconnect automatically. However, Telnet sessions must be restarted manually.
- This command clears the event log and all counters.



# Image Command

Manages and installs switch firmware.

Authority Admin session

## Syntax image

cleanup fetch [account\_name] [ip\_address] [file\_source] [file\_destination] install list unpack [file]

## Keywords cleanup

Removes all firmware image files from the switch. All firmware image files are removed automatically each time the switch is reset.

## fetch [account\_name] [ip\_address] [file\_source] [file\_destination]

Retrieves image file given by [file\_source] and stores it on the switch with the file name given by [file\_destination]. The image file is retrieved from the FTP server with the IP address given by [ip\_address] and an account name given by [account\_name]. If an account name needs a password to access the FTP server, the system will prompt you for it.

### install

Downloads firmware from a remote host to the switch, installs the firmware, then resets the switch (without a power-on self test) to activate the firmware. This reset is disruptive. The command prompts you for the following:

- IP address of the remote host
- An account name and password on the remote host
- Pathname for the firmware image file

## list

Displays the list of image files that reside on the switch.

## unpack [file]

Installs the firmware file given by [file]. After unpacking the file, a message appears confirming successful unpacking. The switch must be reset for the new firmware to take effect.

**Notes** To provide consistent performance throughout the fabric, ensure that all switches are running the same version of firmware.

To install firmware when the management workstation has an FTP server, use the Image Install command or the "Firmware Install Command" on page B-24. To install firmware when the management workstation does not have an FTP server, do the following:

- 1. Connect to the switch through the Ethernet port or the serial port.
- 2. Move to the folder or directory on the workstation that contains the new firmware image file.
- 3. Establish communications with the switch using the File Transfer Protocol (FTP). Enter one of the following on the command line:

>ftp xxx.xxx.xxx

or

>ftp switchname

where *xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx* is the switch IP address, and *switchname* is the switch name associated with the IP address.

4. Enter the following account name and password:

user:images

password: images

5. Activate binary mode and copy the firmware image file on the switch:

ftp>bin

ftp>put filename

6. Wait for the transfer to complete, then close the FTP session.

xxxxx bytes sent in xx secs.

ftp>quit

7. Establish communications with the switch using the CLI. Enter one of the following on the command line:

telnet xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx

or

telnet *switchname* 

where *xxx.xxx.xxx* is the switch IP address, and *switchname* is the switch name associated with the IP address.

8. A Telnet window opens prompting you for a login. Enter an account name and password. The default account name and password are (admin, password).

9. Open an Admin session to acquire the necessary authority.

SANbox \$>admin start

10. Display the list of firmware image files on the switch to confirm that the file was loaded.

SANbox (admin) \$>image list

11. Unpack the firmware image file to install the new firmware in flash memory.

SANbox (admin) \$>image unpack filename

12. Wait for the unpack to complete.

image unpack command result: Passed

 A message will prompt you to reset the switch to activate the firmware. Resetting the switch is disruptive. Use the Hotreset command to attempt a non-disruptive activation.

SANbox (admin) \$>hotreset

**Examples** The following is an example of the Image Install command:

```
SANbox (admin) #> image install
```

```
Warning: Installing new firmware requires a switch reset.
 Continuing with this action will terminate all management sessions,
 including any Telnet sessions. When the firmware activation is complete,
 you may log in to the switch again.
 Do you want to continue? [y/n]: y
    Press 'q' and the ENTER key to abort this command.
  User Account
                 : johndoe
  IP Address
                 : 10.20.33.130
  Source Filename : 5.0.00.11_mpc
  About to install image. Do you want to continue? [y/n] y
Connected to 10.20.33.130 (10.20.33.130).
220 localhost.localdomain FTP server (Version wu-2.6.1-18) ready.
331 Password required for johndoe.
Password: xxxxxxxx
230 User johndoe logged in.
bin
200 Type set to I.
verbose
Verbose mode off.
  This may take several seconds...
  The switch will now reset.
Connection closed by foreign host.
```

# Lip Command

Reinitializes the specified loop port.

- Authority Admin session
- Syntax lip [port\_number]
- Keywords [port\_number]

The number of the port to be reinitialized. Ports are numbered beginning with 0.

**Examples** The following is an example of the Lip command:

SANbox (admin) #> lip 2



# **Passwd Command**

Changes a user account's password.

Authority Admin account name and an admin session to change another account's password; You can change you own password without an Admin session.

Syntax passwd [account\_name]

### Keywords [account\_name]

The user account name. To change the password for an account name other than your own, you must open an admin session with the account name Admin. If you omit [account\_name], you will be prompted to change the password for the current account name.

**Examples** The following is an example of the Passwd command:

SANbox (admin) #> passwd user2

Press 'q' and the ENTER key to abort this command.

please confirm account NEW password: \*\*\*\*\*\*\* password has been changed.

# **Ping Command**

Initiates an attempt to communicate with another switch over an Ethernet network and reports the result.

Authority	None
Syntax	ping [ip_address]
Keywords	<b>[ip_address]</b> The IP address of the switch to query. Broadcast IP addresses, such as 255.255.255.255, are not valid.
Examples	The following is an example of a successful Ping command:
	SANbox #> ping 10.20.11.57
	Ping command issued. Waiting for response
	SANbox #>
	Response successfully received from 10.20.11.57.
	This following is an example of an unsuscessful Ding commondy

This following is an example of an unsuccessful Ping command:

SANbox #> ping 10.20.10.100

Ping command issued. Waiting for response... No response from 10.20.10.100. Unreachable.



# **Ps Command**

Displays current system process information.

AuthorityNoneSyntaxpsExamplesThe following is an example of the Ps command:<br/>SANbox #> ps

PID	PPID	%CPU	TIME	ELAPSED	COMMAND
338	327	0.0	00:00:00	3-01:18:35	cns
339	327	0.0	00:00:01	3-01:18:35	ens
340	327	0.0	00:00:21	3-01:18:35	dlog
341	327	0.1	00:05:35	3-01:18:35	ds
342	327	0.2	00:11:29	3-01:18:35	mgmtApp
343	327	0.0	00:00:04	3-01:18:35	fc2
344	327	0.0	00:02:16	3-01:18:35	nserver
345	327	0.0	00:02:44	3-01:18:35	mserver
346	327	0.8	00:35:12	3-01:18:35	util
347	327	0.0	00:00:29	3-01:18:35	snmpservicepath
348	327	0.0	00:02:46	3-01:18:34	eport
349	327	0.0	00:00:21	3-01:18:34	PortApp
350	327	5.6	04:08:24	3-01:18:34	port_mon
351	327	0.0	00:01:38	3-01:18:34	zoning
352	327	0.0	00:00:01	3-01:18:34	diagApp
404	327	0.0	00:00:04	3-01:18:27	snmpd
405	327	0.0	00:00:02	3-01:18:27	snmpmain
406	405	0.0	00:00:00	3-01:18:26	snmpmain



# **Quit Command**

Closes the Telnet session.

- Authority None
- Syntax quit, exit, or logout

**Notes** You can also enter Control-D to close the Telnet session.



# **Reset Command**

Resets the switch configuration parameters. If you omit the keyword, the default is Reset Switch.

Authority Admin session

Syntax reset

config [config\_name] factory port [port\_number] radius security services snmp switch (default) system zoning

# Keywords config [config\_name]

Resets the configuration given by [config\_name] to the factory default values for switch, port, port threshold alarm, and zoning configuration as described in Table B-9 through Table B-12. If [config\_name] does not exist on the switch, a configuration with that name will be created. If you omit [config\_name], the active configuration is reset. You must activate the configuration for the changes to take effect. for switch, port, and port threshold alarm configuration default values.

### factory

Resets switch configuration, port configuration, port threshold alarm configuration, zoning configuration, SNMP configuration, system configuration, security configuration, RADIUS configuration, switch services configuration, and zoning to the factory default values as described in Table B-9 through Table B-17. The switch configuration is activated automatically.

- **NOTE:** Because this keyword changes network parameters, the workstation could lose communication with the switch and release the Admin session.
  - This keyword does not affect installed license keys.

### port [port\_number]

Reinitializes the port given by [port\_number]. Ports are numbered beginning with 0.

### radius

Resets the RADIUS configuration to the default values as described in Table B-14.

### security

Clears the security database and deactivates the active security set. The security configuration value, autosave, and fabric binding remain unchanged.

### services

Resets the switch services configuration to the default values as described in Table B-15.

#### snmp

Resets the SNMP configuration settings to the factory default values. Refer to Table B-13 for SNMP configuration default values.

### switch

Resets the switch without a power-on self test. This is the default. This reset disrupts traffic and does the following:

- Activates the pending firmware.
- Closes all management sessions.
- Clears the event log. To save the event log before resetting, refer to the "Set Log Command" on page B-74.

To reset the switch with a power-on self test, refer to the "Hardreset Command" on page B-33. To reset the switch without disrupting traffic, refer to the "Hotreset Command" on page B-36.

#### system

Resets the system configuration settings to the factory default values. as described in Table B-16.

- **NOTE:** Because this keyword changes network parameters, the workstation could lose communication with the switch.
  - This keyword does not affect installed license keys.

### zoning

Clears the zoning database and deactivates the active zone set. The zoning configuration values (autosave, default visibility) remain unchanged.

# **Notes** The following tables specify the various factory default settings:

Enter the Show Config Switch command to display switch configuration values.

Parameter	Default
Admin State	Online
Broadcast Enabled	True
InbandEnabled	True
FDMIEnabled	True
FDMIEntries	1000
DefaultDomain ID	1 (0x Hex)
Domain ID Lock	False
Symbolic Name	SANbox
R_A_TOV	10000
E_D_TOV	2000
Principal Priority	254
Configuration Description	Config Default
InteropMode	Standard
LegacyAddressFormat	False

# Table B-9. Switch Configuration Defaults

Enter the Show Config Port command to display port configuration values.

Parameter	1-Gbps/2-Gbps Port Defaults	10-Gbps Port Defaults
Admin State	Online	Online
Link Speed	Auto	10-Gbps
Port Type	GL	G
Symbolic Name	Portn, where n is the port number	10G-n, where n is the port number
ALFairness	False	N/A
DeviceScanEnabled	True	True
ForceOfflineRSCN	False	False
ARB_FF	False	N/A
InteropCredit	0	0
ExtCredit	0	N/A
FANEnable	True	N/A
AutoPerfTuning	True	True
LCFEnable	False	False
MFSEnable	False	False
MSEnable	True	False
NoClose	False	N/A
IOStreamGuard	Auto	Auto
VIEnable	False	False
PDISCPingEnable	True	N/A

Table B-10.	Port Configuration	Defaults
-------------	--------------------	----------

Enter Show Config Threshold command to display threshold alarm configuration values.

Parameter	Default
ThresholdMonitoringEnabled	False
CRCErrorsMonitoringEnabled	True
RisingTrigger	25
FallingTrigger	1
SampleWindow	10
DecodeErrorsMonitoringEnabled	True
RisingTrigger	200
FallingTrigger	0
SampleWindow	10
ISLMonitoringEnabled	True
RisingTrigger	2
FallingTrigger	0
SampleWindow	10
LoginMonitoringEnabled	True
RisingTrigger	5
FallingTrigger	1
SampleWindow	10
LogoutMonitoringEnabled	True
RisingTrigger	5
FallingTrigger	1
SampleWindow	10
LOSMonitoringEnabled	True
RisingTrigger	100
FallingTrigger	5
SampleWindow	10

Table B-11. Port Threshold Alarm Configuration Defaults

Enter the Show Config Zoning command to display zoning configuration values.

Parameter	Default
InteropAutoSave	True
DefaultVisibility	All
DiscardInactive	False

Enter the Show Setup SNMP command to display SNMP configuration values.

Parameter	Default
SNMPEnabled	True
Contact	<syscontact undefined=""></syscontact>
Location	<syslocation undefined=""></syslocation>
Description	SANbox 5200 Series FC Switch
Trap [1-5] Address	Trap 1: 10.0.0.254; Traps 2–5: 0.0.0.0
Trap [1-5] Port	162
Trap [1-5] Severity	Warning
Trap [1-5] Version	2
Trap [1-5] Enabled	False
ObjectID	1.3.6.14.1.1663.1.1.1.17 (SANbox 5200) 1.3.6.1.4.1.1663.1.1.1.30 (SANbox 5202)
AuthFailureTrap	False
ProxyEnabled	True

Enter the Show Setup Radius command to display RADIUS configuration values.

Table B-14. RADIUS Configuration Defaults

Parameter	Default
DeviceAuthOrder	Local
UserAuthOrder	Local
TotalServers	1
DeviceAuthServer	False
UserAuthServer	False
AccountingServer	False
ServerIPAddress	10.0.0.1
ServerUDPPort	1812

Parameter	Default
Timeout	2 seconds
Retries	0
SignPackets	False

 Table B-14. RADIUS Configuration Defaults (Continued)

Enter the Show Setup Services command to display switch service configuration values.

Parameter	Default
TelnetEnabled	True
SSHEnabled	False
GUIMgmtEnabled	True
SSLMgmtEnabled	False
EmbeddedGUIEnabled	True
SNMPEnabled	True
NTPEnabled	False
CIMEnabled	True
FTPEnabled	True.
MgmtServerEnabled	False

 Table B-15. Services Configuration Defaults

Enter the Show Setup System command to display system configuration values.

 Table B-16. System Configuration Defaults

Parameter	Default
Ethernet Network Discovery	Static
Ethernet Network IP Address	10.0.0.1
Ethernet Network IP Mask	255.0.0.0
Ethernet Gateway Address	10.0.254
Admin Timeout	30 minutes

Parameter	Default
InactivityTimeout	0
LocalLogEnabled	True
RemotelogEnabled	False
RemoteLogHostAddress	10.0.254
NTPClientEnabled	False
NTPServerAddress	10.0.254
EmbeddedGUIEnabled	True

# Table B-16. System Configuration Defaults

Enter the Show Config Security command to display security configuration values.

# Table B-17. Security Configuration Defaults

Parameter	Default
AutoSave	True
FabricBindingEnabled	True



# **Security Command**

Opens a Security Edit session in which to manage the security database on a switch. Refer to the "Group Command" on page B-25 and the "Securityset Command" on page B-57.

**Authority** Admin session. The keywords Active, History, Limits, and List are available without an Admin session.

### Syntax security active cancel clear edit history limits list restore save

## Keywords active

Displays the active security set, its groups, and group members. This keyword does not require an Admin session.

### cancel

Closes a Security Edit session without saving changes. Use the Edit keyword to open a Security Edit session.

### clear

Clears all inactive security sets from the volatile edit copy of the security database. This keyword does not affect the non-volatile security database. However, if you enter the Security Clear command followed by the Security Save command, the non-volatile security database will be cleared from the switch.

**NOTE:** The preferred method for clearing the security database from the switch is the Reset Security command. Refer to the "Reset Command" on page B-45.

## edit

Initiates a Security Edit session in which to make changes to the security database. A Security Edit session enables you to use the Group and Securityset commands to create, add, and delete security sets, groups, and group members. To close a Security Edit session and save changes, enter the Security Save command. To close a Security Edit session without saving changes, enter the Security Cancel command.

### history

Displays history information about the security database and the active security set including the account name that made changes and when those changes were made. This keyword does not require an Admin session.

### limits

Displays the current totals and the security database limits for the number of security sets, groups, members per group, and total members. This keyword does not require an Admin session.

#### list

Displays all security sets, groups, and group members in the security database. This keyword does not require an Admin session.

#### restore

Reverts the changes to the security database that have been made during the current Security Edit session since the last Security Save command was entered.

#### save

Saves the changes that have been made to the security database during a Security Edit session. Changes you make to any security set will not take effect until you activate that security set. Refer to the "Securityset Command" on page B-57 for information about activating a security set.

**Examples** The following is an example of the Security Active command:

```
SANbox #> security active
 Active Security Information
 SecuritySet Group GroupMember
 _____ _
 alpha
            group1 (ISL)
                  10:00:00:00:00:10:21:16
                     Authentication
                                    Chap
                                    MD5
                     Primary Hash
                     Primary Secret *******
                     Secondary Hash SHA-1
                     Secondary Secret *******
                     Binding
                                      0
                   10:00:00:00:10:21:17
                     Authentication
                                     Chap
                     Primary Hash
                                    MD5
                                     ******
                     Primary Secret
                     Secondary Hash
                                    SHA-1
                     Secondary Secret *******
                     Binding
                                      0
```

#### The following is an example of the Security History command:

```
SB211.192 #> security history
Active Database Information
------
SecuritySetLastActivated/DeactivatedBy Remote
SecuritySetLastActivated/DeactivatedOn day month date time year
Database Checksum
Inactive Database Information
------
ConfigurationLastEditedBy
admin@IB-session11
ConfigurationLastEditedOn
Database Checksum
00007558
```

#### The following is an example of the Security Limits command:

SANbox #> security limits					
Security Attribute	Maximum	Current	[Name]		
MaxSecuritySets	4	1			
MaxGroups	16	2			
MaxTotalMembers	1000	19			
MaxMembersPerGroup	1000				
		4	groupl		
		15	group2		

The following is an example of the Security List command:

```
SANbox (admin-security) #> security list
SB211.192 #> security list
 Active Security Information
 SecuritySet Group GroupMember
 ----- -----
 No active securityset defined.
 Configured Security Information
 SecuritySet Group GroupMember
 ----- -----
 alpha
             group1 (ISL)
                   10:00:00:00:00:10:21:16
                     Authentication
                                   Chap
                     Primary Hash
                                     MD5
                                     ******
                     Primary Secret
                     Secondary Hash
                                   SHA-1
                     Secondary Secret *******
                     Binding
                                      0
                   10:00:00:00:10:21:17
                     Authentication
                                      Chap
                     Primary Hash
                                     MD5
                     Primary Secret
                                     ******
                     Secondary Hash
                                     SHA-1
                     Secondary Secret *******
                     Binding
                                      0
```



# Securityset Command

Manages security sets in the security database.

Authority Admin session and a Security Edit session. Refer to the "Security Command" on page B-53 for information about starting a Security Edit session. The Active, Groups, and List keywords are available without an Admin session. You must close the Security Edit session before using the Activate and Deactivate keywords.

Syntax securityset activate

<u>activate [security\_set]</u> active add [security\_set] [group\_list] copy [security\_set\_source] [security\_set\_destination] create [security\_set] <u>deactivate</u> <u>del</u>ete [security\_set] groups [security\_set] list remove [security\_set] [group] rename [security\_set\_old] [security\_set\_new]

# Keywords activate [security\_set]

Activates the security set given by [security\_set]. This keyword deactivates the active security set. Close the Security Edit session using the Security Save or Security Cancel command before using this keyword.

### active

Displays the name of the active security set. This keyword is available to without an Admin session.

### add [security\_set] [group\_list]

Adds one or more groups given by [group\_list] to the security set given by [security\_set]. Use a <space> to delimit multiple group names in [group\_list]. A security set can have a maximum of three groups with no more than one group of each group type.

## copy [security\_set\_source] [security\_set\_destination]

Creates a new security set named [security\_set\_destination] and copies into it the membership from the security set given by [security\_set\_source].

### create [security\_set]

Creates the security set with the name given by [security\_set]. A security set name must begin with a letter and be no longer than 64 characters. Valid characters are 0-9, A-Z, a-z, \_, \$, ^, and -. The security database supports a maximum of 4 security sets.

### deactivate

Deactivates the active security set. Close the Security Edit session before using this keyword.

### delete [security\_set]

Deletes the security set given by [security\_set]. If the specified security set is active, the command is suspended until the security set is deactivated.

### groups [security\_set]

Displays all groups that are members of the security set given by [security\_set]. This keyword is available without an Admin session.

#### list

Displays a list of all security sets. This keyword is available without an Admin session.

#### remove [security\_set] [group]

Removes a group given by [group] from the security set given by [security\_set]. If [security\_set] is the active security set, the group will not be removed until the security set has been deactivated.

### rename [security\_set\_old] [security\_set\_new]

Renames the security set given by [security\_set\_old] to the name given by [security\_set\_new].

**Notes** Refer to the "Group Command" on page B-25 for information about creating and managing groups.

### **Examples** The following is an example of the Securityset Active command

SANbox #> securityset active
Active SecuritySet Information
ActiveSecuritySet alpha
LastActivatedBy Remote
LastActivatedOn day month date time year

#### The following is an example of the Securityset Groups command

SANbox #> securityset groups alpha

Current list of Groups for SecuritySet: alpha

-----

group1 (ISL) group2 (Port)

### The following is an example of the Securityset List command

```
SANbox #> securityset list
Current list of SecuritySets
------
alpha
beta
```



# Set Command

Sets a variety of switch parameters.

Authority Admin session for all keywords except Alarm, Beacon, and Pagebreak which are available without an Admin session.

## Syntax set

alarm [option] beacon [state] config [option] log [option] pagebreak [state] port [option] setup [option] switch [state] timezone

# Keywords alarm [option]

Controls the display of alarms in the session output stream or clears the alarm log. [option] can be one of the following:

clear

Clears the alarm log history. This value requires an Admin session.

on

Enables the display of alarms in the session output stream.

off

Disables the display of alarms in the session output stream.

## beacon [state]

Enables or disables the flashing of the Logged-In LEDs according to [state]. This keyword does not require an admin session. [state] can be one of the following:

on

Enables the flashing beacon.

off

Disables the flashing beacon.

## config [option]

Sets switch, port, port threshold alarm, security, and zoning configuration parameters. Refer to the "Set Config Command" on page B-61.

## log [option]

Specifies the type of entries to be entered in the event log. Refer to the "Set Log Command" on page B-74.

### pagebreak [state]

Specifies how much information is displayed on the screen at a time according to the value given by [state]. This keyword does not require an admin session. [state] can be one of the following:

on

Limits the display of information to 20 lines at a time. The page break functions affects the following commands: Alias (List, Members), Show (Alarm, Log), Zone (List, Members), Zoneset (List, Zones), Zoning (Active, List).

off

Allows continuous display of information without a break.

### port [option]

Sets port state and speed for the specified port. The previous Set Config Port settings are restored after a switch reset or a reactivation of a switch configuration. Refer to the "Set Port Command" on page B-78.

#### setup [option]

Changes SNMP and system configuration settings. Refer to the "Set Setup Command" on page B-80.

### switch [state]

Changes the administrative state for all ports on the switch to the state given by [state]. The previous Set Config Switch settings are restored after a switch reset or a reactivation of a switch configuration. [state] can be one of the following:

online Places all ports online offline

Places all ports offline.

diagnostics Prepares all ports for testing.

#### timezone

Specifies the time zone for the switch and the workstation. The default is Universal Time (UTC) also known as Greenwich Mean Time (GMT). This keyword prompts you to choose a region, then a subregion to specify the time zone.

### **Examples** The following examples enables and disables the beacon:

SANbox #> set beacon on

Command succeeded.

SANbox \$> set beacon off

Command succeeded.



# Set Config Command

Sets switch, port, port threshold alarm, security, and zoning configuration parameters. The changes you make with this command are not retained when you reset or power cycle the switch unless you save them using the Config Save command. Refer to the "Config Command" on page B-16.

Authority Admin session and a Config Edit session

#### Syntax set config

port [port\_number] ports [port\_number] security switch threshold zoning

### Keywords port [port\_number]

Initiates an edit session in which to change configuration parameters for the port number given by [port\_number]. If you omit [port\_number], the system begins with port 0 and proceeds in order through the last port. For each parameter, enter a new value or press the Enter key to accept the current value shown in brackets. Enter "q" to end the configuration for one port, or "qq" to end the configuration for all ports. Table B-18 describes the port parameters.

### ports [port\_number]

Initiates an editing session in which to change configuration parameters for all ports based on the configuration for the port given by [port\_number]. If you omit [port\_number], port 0 is used. For each parameter, enter a new value or press the Enter key to accept the current value shown in brackets. Enter "q" to end the configuration. Table B-18 describes the port parameters.

Parameter	Description
AdminState	<ul> <li>Port administrative state:</li> <li>Online – Activates and prepares the port to send data. This is the default.</li> <li>Offline – Prevents the port from receiving signal and accepting a device login.</li> <li>Diagnostics – Prepares the port for testing and prevents the port from accepting a device login.</li> <li>Down – Disables the port by removing power from the port lasers.</li> </ul>
LinkSpeed	<ul> <li>Transmission speed:</li> <li>1-Gbps/2-Gbps Ports: 1-Gbps, 2-Gbps, or Auto. The default is Auto.</li> <li>10-Gbps Ports: 10-Gbps</li> </ul>

Table B-18. Set Config Port Parameters

Parameter	Description
PortType	<ul> <li>Port type:</li> <li>■ 1-Gbps/2-Gbps Ports: GL, G, F, FL, Donor. The default is GL.</li> <li>■ 10-Gbps Ports: G</li> </ul>
SymbolicPortName	Descriptive name for the port. The name can be up to 32 characters excluding #, semicolon (;), and comma (,). The default is Port n where n is the port number.
ALFairness (1-Gbps/2-Gbps ports only)	Arbitration loop fairness. Enables (True) or disables (False) the switch's priority to arbitrate on the loop. The default is False.
DeviceScanEnabled	Enables (True) or disables (False) the scanning of the connected device for FC-4 descriptor information during login. The default is True.
ForceOfflineRSCN	Enables (False) or disables (True) the immediate transmission of RSCN messages when communication between a port and a device is interrupted. If enabled, the RSCN message is delayed for 200 ms for locally attached devices and 400 ms for devices connected through other switches. The default is False. This parameter is ignored if IOStreamGuard is enabled.
ARB_FF (1-Gbps/2-Gbps ports only)	Send ARB_FF (True) instead of IDLEs (False) on the loop. The default is False.
InteropCredit	Interoperability credit. The number of buffer-to-buffer credits per port. 0 means the default (16) is unchanged. Changing interoperability credits is necessary only for E_Ports that are connected to non-FC-SW-2-compliant switches. Contact your authorized maintenance provider for assistance in using this feature.
ExtCredit (1-Gbps/2-Gbps ports only)	Extended credits. The number of port buffer credits that this port can acquire from donor ports. The default is 0.
FANEnable (1-Gbps/2-Gbps ports only)	Fabric address notification. Enables (True) or disables (False) the communication of the FL_Port address, port name, and node name to the logged-in NL_Port. The default is True.

Table B-18. Set Config Port Parameters (Continued)

Parameter	Description
AutoPerfTuning	<ul> <li>Automatic performance tuning for FL_Ports only. The default is True.</li> <li>If AutoPerfTuning is enabled (True) and the port is an FL_Port, MFSEnable is automatically enabled. LCFEnable and VIEnable are overridden to False.</li> <li>If AutoPerfTuning is disabled (False), MFSEnable, LCFEnable, and VIEnable retain their original values.</li> </ul>
LCFEnable	Link control frame preference routing. This parameter appears only if AutoPerfTuning is False. Enables (True) or disables (False) preferred routing of frames with R_CTL = 1100 (Class 2 responses). The default is False. Enabling LCFEnable will disable MFSEnable.
MFSEnable	Multi-Frame Sequence bundling. This parameter appears only if AutoPerfTuning is False. Prevents (True) or allows (False) the interleaving of frames in a sequence. The default is False. Enabling MFSEnable disables LCFEnable and VIEnable.
VIEnable	Virtual Interface (VI) preference routing. This parameter appears only if AutoPerfTuning is False. Enables (True) or disables (False) VI preference routing. The default is False. Enabling VIEnable will disable MFSEnable.
MSEnable	Management server enable. Enables (True) or disables (False) management server on this port. The default is True.
NoClose (1-Gbps/2-Gbps ports only)	Loop circuit closure prevention. Enables (True) or disables (False) the loop's ability to remain in the open state indefinitely. True reduces the amount of arbitration on a loop when there is only one device on the loop. The default is False.

Parameter	Description
IOStreamGuard	<ul> <li>I/O Stream Guard. Enables or disables the suppression of RSCN messages. IOStreamGuard can have the following values:</li> <li>Enable – Suppresses the reception of RSCN messages from other ports for which IOStreamGuard is enabled.</li> <li>Disable – Allows free transmission and reception of RSCN messages.</li> <li>Auto – Suppresses the reception of RSCN messages when the port is connected to an initiator device with a QLogic HBA. For older QLogic HBAs, such as the QLA2200, the DeviceScanEnabled parameter must also be enabled. The default is Auto.</li> </ul>
PDISCPingEnable (1-Gbps/2-Gbps ports only)	Enables (True) or disables (False) the transmission of ping messages from the switch to all devices on a loop port. The default is True.

Table B-18. Set Config Port Parameters (Continued)

### security

Initiates an editing session in which to change the security settings. The system displays each parameter one line at a time and prompts you for a value. For each parameter, enter a new value or press the Enter key to accept the current value shown in brackets. Enter "q" or "Q" to end the editing session. Table B-19 describes the Set Config Security parameters.

Parameter	Description
AutoSave	Enables (True) or disables (False) the saving of changes to active security set in the switch's permanent memory. The default is True.
FabricBindingEnabled	Enables (True) or disables (False) the configuration and enforcement of fabric binding on all switches the fabric. Fabric binding associates switch worldwide names with a domain ID in the creation of ISL groups.

### switch

Initiates an editing session in which to change switch configuration settings. The system displays each parameter one line at a time and prompts you for a value. For each parameter, enter a new value or press the Enter key to accept the current value shown in brackets. Table B-20 describes the Set Config Switch parameters.

Parameter	Description
AdminState	Switch administrative state: online, offline, or diagnostics. The default is Online.
BroadcastEnabled	Broadcast. Enables (True) or disables (False) forwarding of broadcast frames. The default is True.
InbandEnabled	Inband management. Enables (True) or disables (False) the ability to manage the switch over an ISL. The default is True.
FDMIEnabled	Fabric Device Monitoring Interface. Enables (True) or disables (False) the monitoring of target and initiator device information. The default is True.
FDMIEntries	The number of device entries to maintain in the FDMI database. Enter a number from 0–1000. The default is 1000.
DefaultDomainID	Default domain ID. The default is 1.
DomainIDLock	Prevents (True) or allows (False) dynamic reassignment of the domain ID. The default is False.
SymbolicName	Descriptive name for the switch. The name can be up to 32 characters excluding #, semicolon (;), and comma (,). The default is SANbox.
R_A_TOV	Resource Allocation Timeout Value. The number of milliseconds the switch waits to allow two ports to allocate enough resources to establish a link. The default is 10000.
E_D_TOV	Error Detect Timeout Value. The number of milliseconds a port is to wait for errors to clear. The default is 2000.
PrincipalPriority	The priority used in the FC-SW-2 principal switch selection algorithm. 1 is high, 255 is low. The default is 254.
ConfigDescription	Switch configuration description. The configuration description can be up to 32 characters excluding #, semicolon (;), and comma (,). The default is Config Default.

Parameter	Description
InteropMode	Propagates just the active zone set throughout the fabric (Standard, FC-SW-2 compliant) or the entire zoning database (Interop-1, non-compliant). The default is Standard.
LegacyAddressFormat	Available only when the InteropMode parameter is Interop-1, this parameter enables (True) or disables (False) the use of legacy address formatting for interoperating with non-FC-SW-2 switches. The default is False.

Table B-20. Set Config Switch	Parameters (Continued)
-------------------------------	------------------------

## threshold

Initiates a configuration session by which to generate and log alarms for selected events. The system displays each event, its triggers, and sampling window one line at a time and prompts you for a value. For each parameter, enter a new value or press the Enter key to accept the current value shown in brackets. These parameters must be saved in a configuration and activated before they will take effect. Refer to the "Config Command" on page B-16 for information about saving and activating a configuration. Table B-21 describes the Set Config Threshold parameters. The switch will down a port if an alarm condition is not cleared within three consecutive sampling windows (by default 30 seconds). Reset the port to bring it back online. An alarm is cleared when the threshold monitoring detects that the error rate has fallen below the falling trigger.

Parameter	Description
Threshold Monitoring Enabled	Master enable/disable parameter for all events. Enables (True) or disables (False) the generation of all enabled event alarms. The default is False.
CRCErrorsMonitoringEnabled DecodeErrorsMonitoringEnabled ISLMonitoringEnabled LoginMonitoringEnabled LogoutMonitoringEnabled LOSMonitoringEnabled	<ul> <li>The event type enable/disable parameter.</li> <li>Enables (True) or disables (False) the generation of alarms for each of the following events:</li> <li>CRC errors</li> <li>Decode errors</li> <li>ISL connection count</li> <li>Device login errors</li> <li>Device logout errors</li> <li>Loss-of-signal errors</li> </ul>
Rising Trigger	The event count above which a rising trigger alarm is logged. The switch will not generate another rising trigger alarm for that event until the count descends below the falling trigger and again exceeds the rising trigger.
Falling Trigger	The event count below which a falling trigger alarm is logged. The switch will not generate another falling trigger alarm for that event until the count exceeds the rising trigger and descends again below the falling trigger.
Sample Window	The period of time in seconds in which to count events.

## Table B-21. Set Config Threshold Parameters

### zoning

Initiates an editing session in which to change switch zoning attributes. The system displays each parameter one line at a time and prompts you for a value. For each parameter, enter a new value or press the Enter key to accept the current value shown in brackets.

Parameter	Description
InteropAutoSave	Available only when the InteropMode parameter is Standard, this parameter enables (True) or disables (False) the saving of changes to active zone set in the switch's permanent memory. Refer to "InteropMode" on page B-66. The default is True. Disabling the Autosave parameter can be useful to prevent the propagation of zoning information when experimenting with different zoning schemes. However, leaving the Autosave parameter disabled can disrupt device configurations should a switch have to be reset. For this reason, the Autosave parameter should be enabled in a production environment.
DefaultVisibility	Enables (All) or disables (None) communication among the switch's ports/devices and the fabric in the absence of an active zone set. The default is All.
DiscardInactive	Enables (True) or disables (False) the discarding of all inactive zone sets from that zoning database. Inactive zone sets are all zone sets except the active zone set. The default is False.

## Table B-22. Set Config Zoning Parameters

### **Examples** The following is an example of the Set Config Port command:

```
SANbox #> admin start
SANbox (admin) #> config edit
SANbox (admin-config) #> set config port 1
```

A list of attributes with formatting and current values will follow. Enter a new value or simply press the ENTER key to accept the current value. If you wish to terminate this process before reaching the end of the list press 'q' or 'Q' and the ENTER key to do so.

Configuring Port Number: 1

AdminState	(1=Online, 2=Offline, 3=Diagnostics, 4=Down)	[Onlin	e]
LinkSpeed	(1=1Gb/s, 2=2Gb/s, 3=Auto)	[Auto	]
PortType	(GL / G / F / FL / Donor)	[GL	]
SymPortName	(string, max=32 chars)	[Port1	]
ALFairness	(True / False)	[False	]
DeviceScanEna	ble (True / False)	[True	]
ForceOfflineR	SCN (True / False)	[False	]
ARB_FF	(True / False)	[False	]
InteropCredit	(decimal value, 0-255)	[0]	]
ExtCredit	(dec value, increments of 15, non-loop only)	[0]	]
FANEnable	(True / False)	[True	]

AutoPerfTunin	g (True / False)	[False	]
LCFEnable	(True / False)	[False	]
MFSEnable	(True / False)	[False	]
VIEnable	(True / False)	[False	]
MSEnable	(True / False)	[True	]
NoClose	(True / False)	[False	]
IOStreamGuard	(Enable / Disable / Auto)	[Disab]	le]
PDISCPingEnab	le (True / False)	[True	]

Finished configuring attributes.

This configuration must be saved (see config save command) and activated (see config activate command) before it can take effect. To discard this configuration use the config cancel command. SANbox (admin-config) #> The following is an example of the Set Config Port command for a 10-Gbps port:

```
SANbox #> admin start
SANbox (admin) #> config edit
SANbox (admin-config) #> set config port 16
```

A list of attributes with formatting and current values will follow. Enter a new value or simply press the ENTER key to accept the current value. If you wish to terminate this process before reaching the end of the list press 'q' or 'Q' and the ENTER key to do so.

Configuring Port Number: 16

AdminState	(1=Online, 2=Offline, 3=Diagnostics, 4=Down)	[Online	]
LinkSpeed	(10=10Gb/s)	[10Gb/s	]
PortType	(G / F)	[ G	]
SymPortName	(string, max=32 chars)	[10G-16	]
DeviceScanEnable	(True / False)	[True	]
ForceOfflineRSCN	(True / False)	[False	]
AutoPerfTuning	(True / False)	[Fales	]
LCFEnable	(True / False)	[False	]
MFSEnable	(True / False)	[False	]
VIEnable	(True / False)	[False	]
MSEnable	(True / False)	[True	]
IOStreamGuard	(Enable / Disable / Auto)	[Disable	l]

Finished configuring attributes.

This configuration must be saved (see config save command) and activated (see config activate command) before it can take effect. To discard this configuration use the config cancel command. SANbox (admin-config) #>



#### The following is an example of the Set Config Security command:

SANbox #> admin start
SANbox (admin) #> config edit
SANbox (admin-config) #> set config security
A list of attributes with formatting and current values will follow.
Enter a new value or simply press the ENTER key to accept the current value.
If you wish to terminate this process before reaching the end of the list
press 'q' or 'Q' and the ENTER key to do so.
FabricBindingEnabled (True / False) [False]
AutoSave (True / False) [True ]

Finished configuring attributes. This configuration must be saved (see config save command) and activated (see config activate command) before it can take effect. To discard this configuration use the config cancel command.

#### The following is an example of the Set Config Switch command:

SANbox #> admin start
SANbox (admin) #> config edit
SANbox (admin-config) #> set config switch

A list of attributes with formatting and default values will follow. Enter a new value or simply press the ENTER key to accept the current value. If you wish to terminate this process before reaching the end of the list press 'q' or 'Q' and the ENTER key to do so.

AdminState	(1=Online, 2=Offline, 3=Diagnostics)	[Online	]
BroadcastEnabled	(True / False)	[True	]
InbandEnabled	(True / False)	[True	]
FDMIEnabled	(True / False)	[True	]
FDMIEntries	(decimal value, 0-1000)	[1000	]
DefaultDomainID	(decimal value, 1-239)	[2	]
DomainIDLock	(True / False)	[False	]
SymbolicName	(string, max=32 chars)	[SANbox	]
R_A_TOV	(decimal value, 100-100000 msec)	[10000	]
E_D_TOV	(decimal value, 10-20000 msec)	[2000	]
PrincipalPriority	(decimal value, 1-255)	[254	]
ConfigDescription	(string, max=64 chars)	[Default Con	fig]
InteropMode	(0=Standard, 1=Interop_1)	[Standard	]

The following is an example of the Set Config Threshold command:				
SANbox #> admin start				
SANbox (admin) #> config edit				
SANbox (admin-config) #> set c	onfig threshold			
A list of attributes with form	atting and curre	nt values wi	ll follow.	
Enter a new value or simply pr	ess the ENTER ke	y to accept	the current	value.
If you wish to terminate this	process before r	eaching the d	end of the	list
press 'q' or 'Q' and the ENTER	key to do so.			
ThresholdMonitoringEnabled	(True / False)		[False	]
CRCErrorsMonitoringEnabled	(True / False)		[True	]
RisingTrigger	(decimal value,	1-1000)	[25	]
FallingTrigger	(decimal value,	0-1000)	[1	]
SampleWindow	(decimal value,	1-1000 sec)	[10	]
DecodeErrorsMonitoringEnabled	(True / False)		[True	]
RisingTrigger	(decimal value,	1-1000)	[200	]
FallingTrigger	(decimal value,	0-1000)	[0]	]
SampleWindow	(decimal value,	1-1000 sec)	[10	]
ISLMonitoringEnabled	(True / False)		[True	]
RisingTrigger	(decimal value,	1-1000)	[2	]
FallingTrigger	(decimal value,	0-1000)	[0]	]
SampleWindow	(decimal value,	1-1000 sec)	[10	]
LoginMonitoringEnabled	(True / False)		[True	]
RisingTrigger	(decimal value,	1-1000)	[5	]
FallingTrigger	(decimal value,	0-1000)	[1	]
SampleWindow	(decimal value,	1-1000 sec)	[10	]
LogoutMonitoringEnabled	(True / False)		[True	]
RisingTrigger	(decimal value,	1-1000)	[5	]
FallingTrigger	(decimal value,	0-1000)	[1	]
SampleWindow	(decimal value,	1-1000 sec)	[10	]
LOSMonitoringEnabled	(True / False)		[True	]
RisingTrigger	(decimal value,	1-1000)	[100	]
FallingTrigger	(decimal value,	0-1000)	[5	]
SampleWindow	(decimal value,	1-1000 sec)	[10	]
Einished configuring attribute	~			

Finished configuring attributes.

This configuration must be saved (see config save command) and activated (see config activate command) before it can take effect. To discard this configuration use the config cancel command.



#### The following is an example of the Set Config Zoning command.

SANbox #> admin start SANbox (admin) #> config edit SANbox (admin-config) #> set config zoning

A list of attributes with formatting and current values will follow. Enter a new value or simply press the ENTER key to accept the current value. If you wish to terminate this process before reaching the end of the list press 'q' or 'Q' and the ENTER key to do so.

InteropAutoSave	(True / False)	[True]
DefaultVisibility	(All / None)	[All ]
DiscardInactive	(True / False)	[False]

Finished configuring attributes.

This configuration must be saved (see config save command) and activated (see config activate command) before it can take effect. To discard this configuration use the config cancel command.

# Set Log Command

Specifies the events to record in the event log and display on the screen. You determine what events to record in the switch event log using the Component, Level, and Port keywords. You determine what events are automatically displayed on the screen using the Display keyword. Alarms are always displayed on the screen.

Authority Admin session

### Syntax

set log archive clear component [filter\_list] display [filter] level [filter] port [port\_list] restore save start (default) stop

### Keywords archive

Collects all log entries and stores the result in new file named *logfile* that is maintained in switch memory where it can be downloaded using FTP. To download *logfile*, open an FTP session, log in with account name/password of "images" for both, and type "get logfile".

#### clear

Clears all log entries.

#### component [filter\_list]

Specifies one or more components given by [filter\_list] to monitor for events. A component is a firmware module that is responsible for a particular portion of switch operation. Use a <space> to delimit values in the list. [filter\_list] can be one or more of the following:

#### All

Monitors all components. To maintain optimal switch performance, do not use this setting with the Level keyword set to Info.

#### Chassis

Monitors chassis hardware components such as fans and power supplies.

#### Eport

Monitors all E\_Ports.

Mgmtserver

Monitors management server status.

Nameserver

Monitors name server status.

None

Monitor none of the component events.

Other

Monitors other miscellaneous events.

Port

Monitors all port events.

SNMP

Monitors all SNMP events.

Switch

Monitors switch management events.

Zoning

Monitors zoning conflict events.

### display [filter]

Specifies the log events to automatically display on the screen according to the event severity levels given by [filter]. [filter] can be one of the following values:

Critical

Critical severity level events. The critical level describes events that are generally disruptive to the administration or operation of the fabric, but require no action.

Warn

Warning severity level events. The warning level describes events that are generally not disruptive to the administration or operation of the fabric, but are more important than the informative level events.

Info

Informative severity level events. The informative level describes routine events associated with a normal fabric.

None

Specifies no severity levels for display on the screen.

### level [filter]

Specifies the severity level given by [filter] to use in monitoring and logging events for the specified components or ports. [filter] can be one of the following values:

Critical

Monitors critical events. The critical level describes events that are generally disruptive to the administration or operation of the fabric, but require no action.

Warn

Monitors warning and critical events. The warning level describes events that are generally not disruptive to the administration or operation of the fabric, but are more important than the informative level events.

Info

Monitors informative, warning, and critical events. The informative level describes routine events associated with a normal fabric. This is the default severity level.

None

Monitors none of the severity levels.

#### port [port\_list]

Specifies one or more ports to monitor for events. Choose one of the following values:

[port\_list]

Specifies port or ports to monitor. Use a <space> to delimit values in the list. Ports are numbered beginning with 0.

All

Specifies all ports.

None

Disables monitoring on all ports.

#### restore

Restores and saves the port, component, and level settings to the default values.

#### save

Saves the log settings for the component, severity level, port, and display level. These settings remain in effect after a switch reset. The log settings can be viewed using the Show Log Settings command. To export log entries to a file, use the Set Log Archive command.

#### start

Starts the logging of events based on the Port, Component, and Level keywords assigned to the current configuration. The logging continues until you enter the Set Log Stop command.

#### stop

Stops logging of events.

**Notes** In addition to critical, warn, and informative severity levels, the highest event severity level is alarm. The alarm level describes events that are disruptive to the administration or operation of a fabric and require administrator intervention. Alarms are always logged and always displayed on the screen.

# Set Port Command

Sets port state and speed for the specified port temporarily until the next switch reset or new configuration activation. This command also clears port counters.

Authority Admin session except for the Clear keyword.

Syntax set port [port\_number] bypass [alpa] clear enable speed [transmission\_speed] state [state]

Keywords [port\_number]

Specifies the port. Ports are numbered beginning with 0.

### bypass [alpa]

Sends a Loop Port Bypass (LPB) to a specific Arbitrated Loop Physical Address (ALPA) or to all ALPAs on the arbitrated loop. [alpa] can be a specific ALPA or the keyword ALL to choose all ALPAs.

#### clear

Clears the counters on the port. This keyword does not require an admin session.

### enable

Sends a Loop Port Enable (LPE) to all ALPAs on the arbitrated loop.

### speed [transmission\_speed]

Specifies the transmission speed for the specified port. Choose one of the following port speed values:

1Gb/s

One gigabit per second. This applies only to ports 0–15.

2Gb/s

Two gigabits per second. This applies only to ports 0–15.

### 10Gb/s

Ten gigabits per second. This applies only to ports 16–19.

Auto

The port speed is automatically detected. This applies only to ports 0–15.



## state [state]

Specifies one of the following administrative states for the specified port:

Online

Places the port online. This activates and prepares the port to send data.

Offline

Places the port offline. This prevents the port from receiving signal and accepting a device login.

Diagnostics

Prepares the port for testing. This prepares the port for testing and prevents the port from accepting a device login.

Down

Disables the port by removing power from the port lasers.

# Set Setup Command

Manages configuration settings for Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service (RADIUS) servers, switch services, SNMP, and system configurations.

- Authority Admin session
- Syntax set setup radius services snmp system

## Keywords radius

Prompts you in a line-by-line fashion to configure RADIUS servers for user account and device authentication. Table B-23 describes the RADIUS server configuration fields.

Entry	Description
DeviceAuthOrder	<ul> <li>Authenticator priority for devices:</li> <li>Local: Authenticate devices using only the local security database. This is the default.</li> <li>Radius: Authenticate devices using only the security database on the RADIUS server.</li> <li>RadiusLocal: Authenticate devices using the RADIUS server security database first. If the RADIUS server is unavailable, then use the local switch security database.</li> </ul>
UserAuthOrder	<ul> <li>Authenticator priority for user accounts:</li> <li>Local: Authenticate users using only the local security database. This is the default.</li> <li>Radius: Authenticate users using only the security database on the RADIUS server.</li> <li>RadiusLocal: Authenticate users using the RADIUS server security database first. If the RADIUS server is unavailable, then use the local switch security database.</li> </ul>
TotalServers	Number of RADIUS servers to configure during this session. Setting TotalServers to 0 disables all RADIUS authentication. The default is 0.
ServerIPAddress	IP address of the RADIUS server. The default is 10.0.0.1.
ServerUDPPort	User Datagram Protocol (UDP) port number on the RADIUS server. The default is 1812.

Table B-23. RADIUS Service Settings

Entry	Description
DeviceAuthServer	Enable (True) or disable (False) this server for device authentication. The default is False.
UserAuthServer	Enable (True) or disable (False) this server for user account authentication. A user authentication RADIUS server requires a secure management connection (SSL). The default is True.
AccountingServer	Enable (True) or disable (False) this server for auditing of activity during a user session. When enabled, user activity is audited whether UserAuthServer is enabled or not.The default is False. The accounting server UDP port number is the ServerUDPPort value plus 1 (default 1813).
Timeout	Number of seconds to wait to receive a response from the RADIUS server before timing out. The default is 2.
Retries	Number of retries after the first attempt to establish communication with the RADIUS server fails. The default is 0.
SignPackets	Enable (True) or disable (False) the use of sign packets to protect the RADIUS server packet integrity. The default is False.
Secret	32-byte hex string or 16-byte ASCII string used as a password for authentication purposes between the switch and the RADIUS server.

Table B-23. RADIUS Service Settings (Continued)

### services

Prompts you in a line-by-line fashion to enable or disable switch services. Table B-24 describes the switch service parameters. For each parameter, enter a new value or press the Enter key to accept the current value shown in brackets.

**NOTE:** Use caution when disabling TelnetEnabled and GUIMgmtEnabled; it is possible to disable all Ethernet access to the switch.

Entry	Description
TelnetEnabled	Enables (True) or disables (False) the ability to manage the switch over a Telnet connection. Disabling this service is not recommended. The default is True.
SSHEnabled	Enables (True) or disables (False) Secure Shell (SSH) connections to the switch. SSH secures the remote connection to the switch. To establish a secure remote connection, your workstation must use an SSH client. The default is False.
GUIMgmtEnabled	Enables (True) or disables (False) out-of-band management of the switch with SANsurfer Switch Manager, the SANsurfer Switch Manager Application Application Programming Interface, SNMP, and CIM. If this service is disabled, the switch can only be managed inband or through the serial port. The default is True.
SSLMgmtEnabled	<ul> <li>Enables (True) or disables (False) secure SSL connections for management applications including SANsurfer Switch Manager, the SANsurfer Switch Manager web applet, SANsurfer Switch Manager Application Programming Interface, and the CIM server. The default is False.</li> <li>To enable secure SSL connections, you must first synchronize the date and time on the switch and workstation.</li> <li>This service must be enabled to authenticate users through a RADIUS server.</li> <li>Enabling SSL automatically creates a security certificate on the switch.</li> <li>To disable SSL when using a user authentication RADIUS server, the RADIUS server authentication order must be local.</li> </ul>

Table B-24. Switch Services Settings

Entry	Description
EmbeddedGUIEnabled	Enables (True) or disables (False) the SANsurfer Switch Manager web applet. The web applet enables you to point at a switch with an internet browser and run SANsurfer Switch Manager through the browser. This parameter is the master control for the Set Setup System command parameter, EmbeddedGUIEnabled. The default is True.
SNMPEnabled	Enables (True) or disables (False) the management of the switch through third-party applications that use the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP). This parameter is the master control for the Set Setup SNMP command parameter, SNMPEnabled. The default is True.
NTPEnabled	Enables (True) or disables (False) the Network Time Protocol (NTP) which allows the synchronizing of switch and workstation dates and times with an NTP server. This helps to prevent invalid SSL certificates and timestamp confusion in the event log. The default is False. This parameter is the master control for the Set Setup System command parameter, NTPClientEnabled. The default is False.
CIMEnabled	Enables (True) or disables (False) the management of the switch through third-party applications that use the Common Information Model (CIM). The default is True.
FTPEnabled	Enables (True) or disables (False) the File Transfer Protocol (FTP) for transferring files rapidly between the workstation and the switch. The default is True.
MgmtServerEnabled	Enables (True) or disables (False) the management of the switch through third-party applications that use GS-3 Management Server (MS). This parameter is the master control for the Set Config Port command parameter, MSEnable. The default is False.

### snmp

Prompts you in a line-by-line fashion to change SNMP configuration settings. Table B-25 describes the SNMP fields. For each parameter, enter a new value or press the Enter key to accept the current value shown in brackets.

Entry	Description
SNMPEnabled	Enables (True) or disables (False) SNMP on the switch. The default is True.
Contact	Specifies the name of the person to be contacted to respond to trap events. The name can be up to 64 characters excluding #, semicolon (;), and comma (,). The default is undefined.
Location	Specifies the name of the switch location. The name can be up to 64 characters excluding #, semicolon (;), and comma (,). The default is undefined.
Trap [1-5] Address	Specifies the workstation IP address to which SNMP traps are sent. The default address for trap 1 is 10.0.0.254. The default address for traps 2–5 is 0.0.0.0. Addresses, other than 0.0.0.0, for all traps must be unique.
Trap [1-5] Port	Specifies the workstation port to which SNMP traps are sent. Valid workstation port numbers are 1–65535. The default is 162.
Trap [1-5] Severity	Specifies the severity level to use when monitoring trap events. The default is Warning.
Trap [1-5] Version	Specifies the SNMP version (1 or 2) to use in formatting traps. The default is 2.
Trap [1-5] Enabled	Specifies whether traps (event information) are enabled or disabled (default).
ReadCommunity	Read community password that authorizes an SNMP agent to read information from the switch. This is a write-only field. The value on the switch and the SNMP management server must be the same. The read community password can be up to 32 characters excluding #, semicolon (;), and comma (,). The default is "public".
WriteCommunity	Write community password that authorizes an SNMP agent to write information to the switch. This is a write-only field. The value on the switch and the SNMP management server must be the same. The write community password can be up to 32 characters excluding #, semicolon (;), and comma (,). The default is "private".

Table B-25. SNMP Configuration Settings (Con	tinued)

Entry	Description
TrapCommunity	Trap community password that authorizes an SNMP agent to receive traps. This is a write-only field. The value on the switch and the SNMP management server must be the same. The trap community password can be up to 32 characters excluding #, semicolon (;), and comma (,). The default is "public".
AuthFailureTrap	Enables (True) or disables (False) the generation of traps in response to trap authentication failures. The default is False.
ProxyEnabled	Enables (True) or disables (False) SNMP communication with other switches in the fabric. The default is True.

### system

Prompts you in a line-by-line fashion to change system configuration settings. Table B-26 describes the system configuration fields. For each parameter, enter a new value or press the Enter key to accept the current value shown in brackets.

**NOTE:** Changing the IP address will terminate all Ethernet management sessions.

Entry	Description
Eth0NetworkDiscovery	Ethernet boot method: 1 - Static, 2 - Bootp, 3 - DHCP, 4 - RARP. The default is 1 - Static.
Eth0NetworkAddress	Ethernet Internet Protocol (IP) address. The default is 10.0.0.1.
Eth0NetworkMask	Ethernet subnet mask address.
Eth0GatewayAddress	Ethernet IP address gateway.
AdminTimeout	Amount of time in minutes the switch waits before terminating an idle Admin session. Zero (0) disables the time out threshold. The default is 30, the maximum is 1440.
InactivityTimeout	Amount of time in minutes the switch waits before terminating an idle Telnet command line interface session. Zero (0) disables the time out threshold. The default is 0, the maximum is 1440.

### Table B-26. System Configuration Settings

Entry	Description
LocalLogEnabled	Enables (True) or disables (False) the saving of log information on the switch. The default is True.
RemoteLogEnabled	Enables (True) or disables (False) the recording of the switch event log on a remote host that supports the syslog protocol. The default is False.
RemoteLogHostAddress	The IP address of the host that will receive the switch event log information if remote logging is enabled. The default is 10.0.0.254.
NTPClientEnabled	Enables (True) or disables (False) the Network Time Protocol (NTP) client on the switch. This client enables the switch to synchronize its time with an NTP server. This feature supports NTP version 4 and is compatible with version 3. An Ethernet connection to the server is required and you must first set an initial time and date on the switch. The synchronized time becomes effective immediately. The default is False.
NTPServerAddress	The IP address of the NTP server from which the NTP client acquires the time and date. The default is 10.0.0.254.
EmbeddedGUIEnabled	Enables (True) or disables (False) the SANsurfer Switch Manager Web applet. Changing this parameter to False while the applet is running will terminate the applet. The default is True.

Table B-26. System Configuration Settings (Continued)

#### **Examples** The following is an example of the Set Setup RADIUS command:

SANbox (admin) #> set setup radius

A list of attributes with formatting and current values will follow. Enter a new value or simply press the ENTER key to accept the current value. If you wish to terminate this process before reaching the end of the attributes for the server being processed, press 'q' or 'Q' and the ENTER key to do so. If you wish to terminate the configuration process completely, press 'qq' or 'QQ' and the ENTER key to so do.

DeviceAuthOrder	(l=Local,	2=Radius,	3=RadiusLocal)	[Loca]	[]
UserAuthOrder	(1=Local,	2=Radius,	3=RadiusLocal)	[Loca]	L]
TotalServers	(decimal v	value, 0-5	)	[1	]

#### Server: 1

ServerIPAddress	(dot-notated IP Address)	[10.20.11.	8]
ServerUDPPort	(decimal value)	[1812	]
DeviceAuthServer	(True / False)	[True	]
UserAuthServer	(True / False)	[True	]
AccountingServer	(True / False)	[False	]
Timeout	(decimal value, 10-30 secs)	[10	]
Retries	(decimal value, 1-3, 0=None)	[0]	]
SignPackets	(True / False)	[False	]
Secret	(32 hex or 16 ASCII char value)	[*******	]
Do you want to sa	ve and activate this radius setup	? (y/n): [n	]

#### The following is an example of the Set Setup Services command:

#### SANbox (admin) #> set setup services

A list of attributes with formatting and current values will follow. Enter a new value or simply press the ENTER key to accept the current value. If you wish to terminate this process before reaching the end of the list press 'q' or 'Q' and the ENTER key to do so.

\*Warning: If services are disabled, the connection to the switch may be lost.

TelnetEnabled	(True / False)	[True ]
SSHEnabled	(True / False)	[False]
GUIMgmtEnabled	(True / False)	[True ]
SSLMgmtEnabled	(True / False)	[False]
EmbeddedGUIEnabled	(True / False)	[True ]
SNMPEnabled	(True / False)	[True ]
NTPEnabled	(True / False)	[False]
CIMEnabled	(True / False)	[True ]
FTPEnabled	(True / False)	[True ]
MgmtServerEnabled	(True / False)	[True ]

Do you want to save and activate this services setup? (y/n): [n]

## The following is an example of the Set Setup SNMP command:

SANbox #> admin start

SANbox (admin) #> set setup snmp

A list of attributes with formatting and current values will follow. Enter a new value or simply press the ENTER key to accept the current value. If you wish to terminate this process before reaching the end of the list

press  $\ensuremath{^{\prime}q'}$  or  $\ensuremath{^{\prime}Q'}$  and the ENTER key to do so.

Trap Severity Options

\_\_\_\_\_

unknown, emergency, alert, critical, error, warning, notify, info, debug, mark SNMPEnabled (True / False) [True ]

SNMPEnabled	(True / False)	[True	]
Contact	(string, max=64 chars)	[ <syscontact< td=""><td>undefined]</td></syscontact<>	undefined]
Location	(string, max=64 chars)	[sysLocation	undefined]
Trap1Address	(dot-notated IP Address)	[10.20.71.15	]
TraplPort	(decimal value)	[162	]
TraplSeverity	(see allowed options above)	[warning	]
TraplVersion	(1 / 2)	[2	]
TraplEnabled	(True / False)	[False	]
Trap2Address	(dot-notated IP Address)	[0.0.0.0	]
Trap2Port	(decimal value)	[162	]
Trap2Severity	(see allowed options above)	[warning	]
Trap2Version	(1 / 2)	[2	]
Trap2Enabled	(True / False)	[False	]
Trap3Address	(dot-notated IP Address)	[0.0.0.0	]
Trap3Port	(decimal value)	[162	]
Trap3Severity	(see allowed options above)	[warning	]
Trap3Version	(1 / 2)	[2	]
Trap3Enabled	(True / False)	[False	]
Trap4Address	(dot-notated IP Address)	[0.0.0.0	]
Trap4Port	(decimal value)	[162	]
Trap4Severity	(see allowed options above)	[warning	]
Trap4Version	(1 / 2)	[2	]
Trap4Enabled	(True / False)	[False	]
Trap5Address	(dot-notated IP Address)	[0.0.0.0	]
Trap5Port	(decimal value)	[162	]
Trap5Severity	(see allowed options above)	[warning	]
Trap5Version	(1 / 2)	[2	]
Trap5Enabled	(True / False)	[False	]
ReadCommunity	(string, max=32 chars)	[public	]
WriteCommunity	(string, max=32 chars)	[private	]
TrapCommunity	(string, max=32 chars)	[public	]
AuthFailureTrap	(True / False)	[False	]
ProxyEnabled	(True / False)	[True	]



## The following is an example of the Set Setup System command:

SANbox (admin) #> set setup system

```
A list of attributes with formatting and current values will follow.
Enter a new value or simply press the ENTER key to accept the current value.
If you wish to terminate this process before reaching the end of the list
press 'q' or 'Q' and the ENTER key to do so.
```

Eth0NetworkDiscovery	(1=Static, 2=Bootp, 3=Dhcp, 4=Rarp)	[Static	]
Eth0NetworkAddress	(dot-notated IP Address)	[10.0.0.1	]
Eth0NetworkMask	(dot-notated IP Address)	[255.255.255.	0]
Eth0GatewayAddress	(dot-notated IP Address)	[10.0.0.254	]
AdminTimeout	(dec value 0-1440 minutes, 0=never)	[30	]
InactivityTimeout	(dec value 0-1440 minutes, 0=never)	[0]	]
LocalLogEnabled	(True / False)	[True	]
RemoteLogEnabled	(True / False)	[False	]
RemoteLogHostAddress	(dot-notated IP Address)	[10.0.0.254	]
NTPClientEnabled	(True / False)	[False	]
NTPServerAddress	(dot-notated IP Address)	[10.0.0.254	]
EmbeddedGUIEnabled	(True / False)	[True	]



# **Show Command**

Displays fabric, switch, and port operational information.

	Displays fabric, switch, and port operational in
Authority	None
Syntax	<pre>show     about     alarm [option]     audit     broadcast     chassis     cimlistener [listener_name]     cimsubscription [subscription_name]     config [option]     domains     donor     fabric     fdmi [port_wwn]     interface     log [option]     lsdb     mem [count]     ns [option]     pagebreak     perf [option]     post log     setup [option]     steering [domain_id]     support     switch     timezone     topology     users     version about </pre>
-	Displays on introductory act of information ab

Displays an introductory set of information about operational attributes of the switch. This keyword is equivalent to the Version keyword.



## alarm [option]

Displays the alarm log and session display setting. If you omit [option], the command displays the last 200 alarm entries. The alarm log is cleared when the switch is reset or power cycled. [option] has the following value:

### setting

Displays the status of the parameter that controls the display of alarms in the session output stream. This parameter is set using the Set Alarm command.

### audit

Displays the most recent 200 records in the administrative audit log. The audit log contains configuration and administrative changes that have been made to the switch including the originating management session and IP address.

### broadcast

Displays the broadcast tree information and all ports that are currently transmitting and receiving broadcast frames.

### chassis

Displays chassis component status and temperature.

### cimlistener [listener\_name]

Displays CIM indicator services listener information for the listener given by [listener\_name]. If you omit [listener\_name], the command displays all listeners.

### cimsubscription [subscription\_name]

Displays CIM subscription information for the subscription given by [subscription\_name]. If you omit [subscription\_name], the command displays all subscriptions.

### config [option]

Displays switch, port, and zoning configuration attributes. Refer to the "Show Config Command" on page B-105.

### domains

Displays list of each domain and its worldwide name in the fabric.

### donor

Displays list of current donor configuration for all ports.

### fabric

Displays list of each domain, symbolic name, worldwide name, node IP address, and port IP address.

### fdmi [port\_wwn]

Displays detailed information about the device host bus adapter given by [port\_wwn]. If you omit [port\_wwn], the command displays a summary of host bus adapter information for all attached devices in the fabric. Illegal characters in the display appear as question marks (?).

### interface

Displays the status of the active network interfaces.

## log [option]

Displays log entries. Refer to the "Show Log Command" on page B-109. The log is cleared when the switch is reset or power cycled.

### lsdb

Displays Link State database information

### mem [count]

Displays information about memory activity for the number of seconds given by [count]. If you omit [count], the value 1 is used. Displayed memory values are in 1K block units.

**NOTE:** This keyword will display memory activity updates until [count] is reached – it cannot be interrupted. Therefore, avoid using large values for [count].

### ns [option]

Displays name server information for the specified [option]. If you omit [option], name server information for the local domain ID is displayed. [option] can have the following values:

all

Displays name server information for all switches and ports.

[domain\_id]

Displays name server information for the switch given by [domain\_id]. [domain\_id] is a switch domain ID.

[port\_id]

Displays name server information for the port given by [port\_id]. [port\_id] is a port Fibre Channel address.

#### pagebreak

Displays the current pagebreak setting. The pagebreak setting limits the display of information to 20 lines (On) or allows the continuous display of information without a break (Off).

#### perf [option]

Displays performance information for all ports. Refer to the "Show Perf Command" on page B-112.

## port [port\_number]

Displays operational information for the port given by [port\_number]. Ports are numbered beginning with 0. If [port number] is omitted, information is displayed for all ports. Table B-27 describes the port parameters.

Entry	Description
Alinit	Incremented each time the port begins AL initialization.
AlinitError	Number of times the port entered initialization and the initialization failed.
Bad Frames	Number of frames that have framing errors.
ClassXFramesIn	Number of class <i>x</i> frames received by this port.
ClassXFramesOut	Number of class <i>x</i> frames sent by this port.
ClassXWordsIn	Number of class <i>x</i> words received by this port.
ClassXWordsOut	Number of class <i>x</i> words sent by this port.
ClassXToss	Number of times an SOFi3 or SOFn3 frame is tossed from TBUF.
DecodeError	Number of decode errors detected
EpConnects	Number of times an E_Port connected through ISL negotiation.
FBusy	Number of times the switch sent a F_BSY because Class 2 frame could not be delivered within ED_TOV time. Number of class 2 and class 3 fabric busy (F_BSY) frames generated by this port in response to incoming frames. This usually indicates a busy condition on the fabric or N_Port that is preventing delivery of this frame.
Flowerrors	Received a frame when there were no available credits.
FReject	Number of frames from devices that were rejected.
InvalidCRC	Invalid CRC detected.
InvalidDestAddr	Invalid destination address detected.
LIP_AL_PD_ALPS	Number of F7, AL_PS LIPs, or AL_PD (vendor specific) resets, performed.
LIP_F7_AL_PS	This LIP is used to reinitialize the loop. An L_Port, identified by AL_PS, may have noticed a performance degradation and is trying to restore the loop.

Table B-27.	Show Port Parameters
-------------	----------------------



Entry	Description
LIP_F8_AL_PS	This LIP denotes a loop failure detected by the L_Port identified by AL_PS.
LIP_F7_F7	A loop initialization primitive frame used to acquire a valid AL_PA.
LIP_F8_F7	A loop initialization primitive frame used to indicate that a loop failure has been detected at the receiver.
Link Failures	Number of optical link failures detected by this port. A link failure is a loss of synchronization or a loss of signal while not in the offline state. A loss of signal causes the switch to attempt to re-establish the link. If the link is not re-established, a link failure is counted. A link reset is performed after a link failure.
Login	Number of device logins
Logout	Number of device logouts
LoopTimeouts	A two (2) second timeout as specified by FC-AL-2.
LossOfSync	Number of synchronization losses (>100 ms) detected by this port. A loss of synchronization is detected by receipt of an invalid transmission word.
PrimSeqErrors	Primitive sequence errors detected.
RxLinkResets	Number of link reset primitives received from an attached device.
RxOfflineSeq	Number of offline sequences received. An OLS is issued for link initialization, a Receive & Recognize Not_Operational (NOS) state, or to enter the offline state.
TotalErrors	Total number of errors detected.
TotalLIPsRecvd	Number of loop initialization primitive frames received by this port.
TotalLIPsXmitd	Number of loop initialization primitive frames transmitted by this port.
TotalLinkResets	Total number of link reset primitives.
TotalOfflineSeq	Total number of Offline Sequences issued and received by this port.
TotalRxFrames	Total number of frames received by this port.
TotalRxWords	Total number of words received by this port.

Table B-27. Show Port Parameters (Continued)

Entry	Description
TotalTxFrames	Total number of frames issued by this port.
TotalTxWords	Total number of words issued by this port.
TxLinkResets	Number of Link Resets issued by this port.
TxOfflineSeq	Total number of Offline Sequences issued by this port.

Table B-27. Show Port Parameters (Continued)

### post log

Displays the Power On Self Test (POST) log which contains results from the most recently failed POST.

### setup [option]

Displays setup attributes for the system, SNMP, and the switch manufacturer. Refer to the "Show Setup Command" on page B-115.

### steering [domain\_id]

Displays the routes that data takes to the switch given by [domain\_id]. If you omit [domain\_id], the system displays routes for all switches in the fabric.

#### support

Executes a series of commands that display a complete description of the switch, its configuration, and operation. The display can be captured from the screen and used for diagnosing problems. This keyword is intended for use at the request of your authorized maintenance provider. The commands that are executed include the following:

- Alias List
- Config List
- Date
- Group List
- History
- Ps
- Security (List, Limits, History)
- Securityset (Active, List)
- Show (About, Alarm, Backtrace, Chassis, Config Port, Config Security, Config Switch, Config Threshold, Dev, Dev Settings, Domains, Donor, Fabric, Log, Log Archive, Log Settings, Lsdb, Mem, Ns, Perf, Port, Setup Mfg, Setup Snmp, Setup System, Steering, Switch, Topology, Users)
- Uptime
- User Accounts

- Whoami
- Zoneset (Active, List)
- Zoning (History, Limits, List)

### switch

Displays switch operational information. Table B-28 describes the switch operational parameters.

Parameter	Description
SymbolicName	Descriptive name for the switch
SwitchWWN	Switch world wide name
SwitchType	Switch model
BootVersion	PROM boot version
CreditPool	Number of port buffer credits available to recipient ports
DomainID	Switch domain ID
FirstPortAddress	FC address of switch port 0
FlashSize - MBytes	Size of the flash memory in megabytes
LogLevel	Event severity level used to record events in the event log
MaxPorts	Number of ports available on the switch
NumberOfResets	Number of times the switch has been reset over its service life
ReasonForLastReset	Action that caused the last reset
ActiveImageVersion - build date	Active firmware image version and build date.
PendingImageVersion - build date	Firmware image version and build date that is pending. This image will become active at the next reset or power cycle.
ActiveConfiguration	Name of the switch configuration that is in use.
AdminState	Switch administrative state
AdminModeActive	Admin session status

## Table B-28. Switch Operational Parameters

Parameter	Description
BeaconOnStatus	Beacon status as set by the Set Beacon command.
OperationalState	Switch operational state
PrincipalSwitchRole	Principal switch status. True indicates that this switch is the principal switch.
BoardTemp (1) - Degrees Celsius	Internal switch temperature at circuit board sensor 1
SwitchDiagnosticsStatus	Results of the power-on self test
SwitchTemperatureStatus	Switch temperature status: normal, warning, failure

## Table B-28. Switch Operational Parameters (Continued)

### timezone

Displays the current time zone setting.

### topology

Displays all connected devices.

#### users

Displays a list of logged-in users. This is equivalent to the User List command.

### version

Displays an introductory set of information about operational attributes of the switch. This keyword is equivalent to the About keyword.

**Examples** The following is an example of the Show Chassis command:

```
SANbox #> show chassis
 Chassis Information
 -----
 BoardTemp (1) - Degrees Celsius
                                  36
 FanStatus (1)
                                  Good
 FanStatus (2)
                                  Good
 FanDirection (1)
                                  BackToFront
 FanDirection (2)
                                  BackToFront
 PowerSupplyStatus (1)
                                  Good
 PowerSupplyStatus (2)
                                  Good
 HeartBeatCode
                                  1
 HeartBeatStatus
                                  Normal
```

#### The following is an example of the Show Domains command:

```
SANbox #> show domains
Principal switch is (remote): 10:00:00:60:69:50:0b:6c
Upstream Principal ISL is : 1
Domain ID List:
Domain 97 (0x61) WWN = 10:00:00:c0:dd:00:71:ed
Domain 98 (0x62) WWN = 10:00:00:60:df:22:2e:0c
Domain 99 (0x63) WWN = 10:00:00:c0:dd:00:72:45
```

```
Domain 100 (0x64) WWN = 10:00:00:c0:dd:00:ba:68
Domain 101 (0x65) WWN = 10:00:00:c0:dd:00:ba:68
Domain 102 (0x66) WWN = 10:00:00:c0:dd:00:90:ef
Domain 103 (0x67) WWN = 10:00:00:60:69:50:0b:6c
Domain 104 (0x68) WWN = 10:00:00:c0:dd:00:b8:b7
```

#### The following is an example of the Show Fabric command:

SANbox #> show fabric

Domain	WWN	Enet IP Addr	FC IP Addr	SymbolicName
16 (0x10)	10:00:00:c0:dd:00:77:81	10.20.68.11	0.0.0.0	gui sbl .11
17 (0x11)	10:00:00:c0:dd:00:6a:2d	10.20.68.12	0.0.0.0	sw12
18 (0x12)	10:00:00:c0:dd:00:c3:04	10.20.68.160	0.0.0.0	sw .160
19 (0x13)	10:00:00:c0:dd:00:bc:56	10.20.68.108	0.0.0.0	Sb2 .108

#### The following is an example of the Show FDMI command:

SANbox #> show fdmi

HBA ID	PortID	Manufacturer	Model	Ports
21:01:00:e0:8b:27:aa:bc	610000	QLogic Corporation	QLA2342	2
21:00:00:00:ca:25:9b:96	180100	QLogic Corporation	QL2330	2



# The following is an example of the Show FDMI WWN command:

SANbox #> show fdmi 21:00:00:e0:8b:09:3b:17

FDMI	Information	

Manufacturer	QLogic Corporation
SerialNumber	[04202
Model	QLA2342
ModelDescription	QLogic QLA2342 PCI Fibre Channel Adapter
PortID	610000
NodeWWN	20:00:00:e0:8b:07:aa:bc
HardwareVersion	FC5010409-10
DriverVersion	8.2.3.10 Beta 2 (W2K VI)
OptionRomVersion	1.21
FirmwareVersion	03.02.13.
OperatingSystem	SunOS 5.8
MaximumCTPayload	2040
NumberOfPorts	1

Port 21:01:00:e0:8b:27:aa:bc

SupportedFC4Types	FCP
SupportedSpeed	2Gb/s
CurrentSpeed	2Gb/s
MaximumFrameSize	2048
OSDeviceName	
HostName	

# The following is an example of the Show NS (local domain) command:

SANbox #> show ns

Seq	Domain	Port	Port			
No	ID	ID	Туре	COS	PortWWN	NodeWWN
1	19 (0x13	3) 1301e1	NL	3	21:00:00:20:37:73:13:69	20:00:00:20:37:73:13:69
2	19 (0x13	3) 1301e2	NL	3	21:00:00:20:37:73:12:9b	20:00:00:20:37:73:12:9b
3	19 (0x13	3) 1301e4	NL	3	21:00:00:20:37:73:05:26	20:00:00:20:37:73:05:26
4	19 (0x13	3) 130d00	Ν	3	21:01:00:e0:8b:27:a7:bc	20:01:00:e0:8b:27:a7:bc

The following is an example of the Show NS [domain\_ID] command:

S	ANbo	x #>	> show 1	ns 18				
	S	eq I	Domain	Port	Poi	rt		
	No	ID		ID	Туре	COS	PortWWN	NodeWWN
	1	18	(0x12)	120700	Ν	3	21:00:00:e0:8b:07:a7:bc	20:00:00:e0:8b:07:a7:bc

#### The following is an example of the Show NS [port\_ID] command:

SANbox #> show ns 1301e1

```
Port ID: 1301e1
_____
PortType
              NL
        21:00:00:20:37:73:13:69
PortWWN
SymbolicPortName
              20:00:00:20:37:73:13:69
NodeWWN
SymbolicNodeName
NodeIPAddress
              0.0.0.0
ClassOfService 3
PortIPAddress 0.0.0.0
FabricPortName 20:01:00:c0:dd:00:bc:56
FC4Type
              FCP
               (NULL)
FC4Desc
```

### The following is an example of the Show Interface command:

SANbox #>	show interface
eth0	Link encap:Ethernet HWaddr 00:C0:DD:00:BD:ED
	inet addr:10.20.68.107 Bcast:10.20.68.255 Mask:255.255.255.0
	UP BROADCAST RUNNING MULTICAST MTU:1500 Metric:1
	RX packets:4712 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 frame:0
	TX packets:3000 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0
	collisions:0 txqueuelen:100
	RX bytes:415313 (405.5 Kb) TX bytes:716751 (699.9 Kb)
	Interrupt:11 Base address:0xfcc0
lo	Link encap:Local Loopback
	inet addr:127.0.0.1 Mask:255.0.0.0
	UP LOOPBACK RUNNING MTU:16436 Metric:1
	RX packets:304 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 frame:0
	TX packets:304 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0
	collisions:0 txqueuelen:0
	RX bytes:20116 (19.6 Kb) TX bytes:20116 (19.6 Kb)

# The following is an example of the Show Port command:

Nbox #> show poi	rt 1		
Port Number: 1			
AdminState	Online	OperationalState	Online
AsicNumber	0	PerfTuningMode	Normal
AsicPort	1	PortID	0e0800
ConfigType	GL	PortWWN	20:08:00:c0:dd:03:d5:
DiagStatus	Passed	RunningType	E
EpConnState	Connected	MediaPartNumber	PL-XPL-VC-SG3-22
EpIsoReason	NotApplicable	MediaRevision	1
IOStreamGuard	Disabled	MediaType	200-M5-SN-I
LinkSpeed	2Gb/s	MediaVendor	Unknown
LinkState	Active	MediaVendorID	00000485
LoginStatus	LoggedIn	SymbolicName	Port8
MaxCredit	16	SyncStatus	SyncAcquired
MediaSpeeds	lGb/s, 2Gb/s	XmitterEnabled	True
ALInit	5	LIP_F8_AL_PS	0
ALInitError	0	LIP_F8_F7	0
BadFrames	0	LinkFailures	2
Class2FramesIn	0	Login	3
Class2FramesOut	0	Logout	2
Class2WordsIn	0	LoopTimeouts	1
Class2WordsOut	0	LossOfSync	2
Class3FramesIn	999	PrimSeqErrors	0
Class3FramesOut	540	RxLinkResets	1
Class3Toss	0	RxOfflineSeq	0
Class3WordsIn	29516	TotalErrors	628777
Class3WordsOut	8406	TotalLinkResets	5 6
DecodeErrors	628775	TotalLIPsRecvd	5
EpConnects	3	TotalLIPsXmitd	7
FBusy	0	TotalOfflineSec	<u>1</u> 5
FlowErrors	0	TotalRxFrames	999
FReject	0	TotalRxWords	29516
InvalidCRC	0	TotalTxFrames	540
InvalidDestAddr	0	TotalTxWords	8406
LIP_AL_PD_AL_PS	0	TxLinkResets	5
LIP_F7_AL_PS	0	TxOfflineSeq	5
	5	-	

# The following is an example of the Show Switch command:

SANbox #> show switch	
Switch Information	
SymbolicName	sw .108
SwitchWWN	10000c0dd00bc56
SwitchType	SANbox 5200 Series
BootVersion	Vx.x.x.x-0 (day month date time year)
CreditPool	0
DomainID	19 (0x13)
FirstPortAddress	130000
FlashSize - MBytes	128
LogLevel	Critical
MaxPorts	20
NumberOfResets	15
ReasonForLastReset	PowerUp
ActiveImageVersion - build date	Vx.x.x.0-2 (day month date time year)
PendingImageVersion - build date	Vx.x.x.0-17 (day month date time year)
ActiveConfiguration	default
AdminState	Online
AdminModeActive	False
BeaconOnStatus	False
OperationalState	Online
PrincipalSwitchRole	False
BoardTemp (1) - Degrees Celsius	32
SwitchDiagnosticsStatus	Passed
SwitchTemperatureStatus	Normal

### The following is an example of the Show Topology command:

SANbox #> show topology Unique ID Key \_\_\_\_\_ A = ALPA, D = Domain ID, P = Port ID Port Local Local Remote Remote Unique Type NodeWWN Number Type PortWWN ID ----------\_\_\_\_\_ F 20:05:00:c0:dd:00:bd:ec N 20:00:00:c9:22:1e:93 010500 P 5 10 E 20:0a:00:c0:dd:00:bd:ec E 10:00:00:c0:dd:00:80:21 4(0x4) D



The following is an example of the Show Topology command for port 1:

```
SANbox #> show topology 1
 Local Link Information
  _____
 PortNumber 1
 PortID 650100
 PortWWN 20:01:00:c0:dd:00:91:11
 PortType F
Remote Link Information
-----
Device 0
NodeWWN 50:80:02:00:00:06:d5:38
PortType NL
Description (NULL)
IPAddress 0.0.0.0
Device 1
NodeWWN 20:00:00:20:37:2b:08:c9
PortType NL
Description (NULL)
IPAddress 0.0.0.0
Device 2
Description (NULL)
IPAddress 0.0.0.0
Device 3
NodeWWN 20:00:00:20:37:2b:05:c9
PortType NL
Description (NULL)
IPAddress 0.0.0.0
```

\*

\*

\*

\*

The following is an example of the Show Version command:

\*\*\*\*\*

```
SANbox #> show version
    *******
    *
    * Command Line Interface SHell (CLISH)
```

SystemDescription	SANbox 5200 Series FC Switch
Eth0NetworkAddress	10.20.11.192 (use 'set setup system' to update)
MACAddress	00:c0:dd:00:71:ee
WorldWideName	10:00:c0:dd:00:71:ed
ChassisSerialNumber	FAM033100024
SymbolicName	SANbox
ActiveSWVersion	V5.0.x.x.xx
ActiveTimestamp	day month date time year
DiagnosticsStatus	Passed
LicensedPorts	20



# **Show Config Command**

Displays switch, port, alarm threshold, security, and zoning for the current configuration.

Authority None

Syntax show config port [port\_number] security switch threshold zoning

## Keywords port [port\_number]

Displays configuration parameters for the port number given by [port\_number]. Ports are numbered beginning with 0. If [port\_number] is omitted, all ports are specified.

### security

Displays the security database Autosave parameter value.

### switch

Displays configuration parameters for the switch.

### threshold

Displays alarm threshold parameters for the switch.

### zoning

Displays zoning configuration parameters for the switch.

**Examples** The following is an example of the Show Config Port command:

SANbox #> show config	g port 3		
Port Number: 3			
AdminState	Offline		
LinkSpeed	Auto		
PortType	GL		
SymbolicName	Port3		
ALFairness	False		
DeviceScanEnabled	True		
ForceOfflineRSCN	False		
ARB_FF	False		
InteropCredit	0		
ExtCredit	0		
FANEnabled	True		
AutoPerfTuning	False		
LCFEnabled	False		
MFSEnabled	True		

MSEnabled	True
NoClose	False
IOStreamGuard	Disabled
VIEnabled	False
PDISCPingEnable	True

# The following is an example of the Show Config Port command for a 10-Gbps port:

SANbox #> show confi	g port 16			
Configuration Name	: default			
Port Number: 16				
AdminState	Online			
LinkSpeed	10Gb/s			
PortType	G			
SymbolicName	10G-16			
DeviceScanEnabled	True			
ForceOfflineRSCN	False			
AutoPerfTuning	False			
LCFEnabled	False			
MFSEnabled	False			
MSEnabled	True			
IOStreamGuard	Disabled			
VIEnabled	False			
PDISCPingEnabled	True			



# The following is an example of the Show Config Switch command:

SANbox #> show config switch

Configuration Name: default

\_\_\_\_\_

Switch Configuration Information

AdminState	Online
BroadcastEnabled	False
InbandEnabled	True
FDMIEnabled	False
FDMIEntries	10
DomainID	19 (0x13)
DomainIDLock	True
SymbolicName	sw108
R_A_TOV	10000
E_D_TOV	2000
PrincipalPriority	254
ConfigDescription	Default Config
ConfigLastSavedBy	admin@OB-session5
ConfigLastSavedOn	day month date time year
InteropMode	Standard

# The following is an example of the Show Config Threshold command:

SANbox #> show config threshold Configuration Name: default ------Threshold Configuration Information ------ThresholdMonitoringEnabled False CRCErrorsMonitoringEnabled True RisingTrigger 25 FallingTrigger 1

FallingTrigger	1
SampleWindow	10
DecodeErrorsMonitoringEnabled	True
RisingTrigger	25
FallingTrigger	0
SampleWindow	10
ISLMonitoringEnabled	True
RisingTrigger	2
FallingTrigger	0
SampleWindow	10
LoginMonitoringEnabled	True
RisingTrigger	5
FallingTrigger	1
SampleWindow	10
LogoutMonitoringEnabled	True
RisingTrigger	5
FallingTrigger	1
SampleWindow	10
LOSMonitoringEnabled	True
RisingTrigger	100
FallingTrigger	5
SampleWindow	10

#### The following is an example of the Show Config Zoning command:

SANbox #> show config zoning Configuration Name: default ------Zoning Configuration Information ------InteropAutoSave True DefaultVisibility All DiscardInactive False



# Show Log Command

Displays the contents of the log or the parameters used to create and display entries in the log. The log contains a maximum of 1200 entries. When the log reaches its entry capacity, subsequent entries overwrite the existing entries, beginning with the oldest.

## Authority None

### Syntax show log

[number\_of\_events] component display [filter] level options port settings

### Keywords [number\_of\_events]

Specifies the number of the most recent events to display from the event log. [number\_of\_events] must be a positive integer.

### component

Displays the components currently being monitored for events. The components are as follows:

All

Monitors all components.

Chassis

Monitors chassis hardware components such as fans and power supplies.

- Eport Monitors all E\_Ports.
- Mgmtserver Monitors management server status.

Nameserver Monitors name server status.

None Monitor none of the component events.

Other Monitors other miscellaneous events.

Port Monitors all port events

SNMP SNMP events.

Switch

Monitors switch management events.

Zoning Monitors zoning conflict events.

# display [filter]

Displays log events on the screen according to the component or severity level filter given by [filter]. [filter] can be one of the following:

Info

Displays all informative events.

Warning

Displays all warning events.

Critical

Displays all critical events.

Eport

Displays all events related to E\_Ports.

Mgmtserver Displays all events related to the management server.

Nameserver Displays all events related to the name server.

Port [port\_number] Displays all events related to the port given by [port\_number].

SNMP

Displays all events related to SNMP.

Switch

Displays all events related to switch management.

Zoning

Displays all events related to zoning.

### level

Displays the event severity level logging setting and the display level setting.

### options

Displays the options that are available for configuring event logging and automatic display to the screen. Refer to the for information about how to configure event logging and display level.

### port

Displays the ports being monitored for events. If an event occurs which is of the defined level and on a defined component, but not on a defined port, no entry is made in the log.

## settings

Displays the current filter settings for component, severity level, port, and display level. This command is equivalent to executing the following commands separately: Show Log Component, Show Log Level, and Show Log Port.

### **Examples** The following is an example of the Show Log Component command:

SANbox #> show log component

```
Current settings for log
```

-----

FilterComponent NameServer MgmtServer Zoning Switch Blade Port Eport Snmp

#### The following is an example of the Show Log Level command:

```
SANbox #> show log level
```

Current	settings	for	log
FilterLe	vel	Inf	ē0
DisplayL	evel	Cri	itical

The following is an example of the Show Log Options command:

SANbox #> show log options

```
Allowed options for log
```

-----

FilterComponent

All, None, NameServer, MgmtServer, Zoning, Switch, Blade, Port, Eport, Snmp

FilterLevel	Critical,Warn,Info,None
DisplayLevel	Critical,Warn,Info,None

#### The following is an example of the Show Log command:

```
SANbox #> show log
```

```
[327][day month date time year][I][Eport Port:0/8][Eport State=
E_A0_GET_DOMAIN_ID]
[328][day month date time year][I][Eport Port: 0/8][FSPF PortUp state=0]
[329][day month date time year][I][Eport Port: 0/8][Sending init hello]
[330][day month date time year][I][Eport Port: 0/8][Processing EFP, oxid= 0x8]
[331][day month date time year][I][Eport Port: 0/8][Eport State = E_A2_IDLE]
[332][day month date time year][I][Eport Port: 0/8][EFP,WWN= 0x100000c0dd00b845,
len= 0x30]
[333][day month date time year][I][Eport Port: 0/8][Sending LSU oxid=0xc:type=1]
[334][day month date time year][I][Eport Port: 0/8][Send Zone Merge Request]
[335][day month date time year][I][Eport Port: 0/8][LSDB Xchg timer set]
[336][day month date time year][I][Eport Port: 0/8][Setting attribute
Oper.UserPort.0.8.EpConnState Connected]
```

# **Show Perf Command**

Displays port performance in frames/second and bytes/second. If you omit the keyword, the command displays data transmitted (out), data received (in), and total data transmitted and received in frames/second and bytes per second.

## Authority None

# Syntax show perf

byte [port\_number] inbyte [port\_number] outbyte [port\_number] frame [port\_number] inframe [port\_number] outframe [port\_number] errors [port\_number]

# Keywords byte [port\_number]

Displays continuous performance data in total bytes/second transmitted and received for the port group (0–15 or 16–19) that includes [port\_number]. If you omit [port\_number], ports 0–15 are displayed. Type "q" and press the Enter key to stop the display.

### inbyte [port\_number]

Displays continuous performance data in bytes/second received for the port group (0–15 or 16–19) that includes [port\_number]. If you omit [port\_number], ports 0–15 are displayed. Type "q" and press the Enter key to stop the display.

### outbyte [port\_number]

Displays continuous performance data in bytes/second transmitted for the set of 16 ports (0–15 or 16–19) that includes [port\_number]. If you omit [port\_number], ports 0–15 are displayed. Type "q" and press the Enter key to stop the display.

## frame [port\_number]

Displays continuous performance data in total frames/second transmitted and received for the set of 16 ports (0–15 or 16–19) that includes [port\_number]. If you omit [port\_number], ports 0–15 are displayed. Type "q" and press the Enter key to stop the display.

## inframe [port\_number]

Displays continuous performance data in frames/second received for the port group (0–15 or 16–19) that includes [port\_number]. If you omit [port\_number], ports 0–15 are displayed. Type "q" and press the Enter key to stop the display.

### outframe [port\_number]

Displays continuous performance data in frames/second transmitted for the port group (0–15 or 16–19) that includes [port\_number]. If you omit [port\_number], ports 0–15 are displayed. Type "q" and press the Enter key to stop the display.

Examples

# errors [port\_number]

Displays continuous error counts for the port group (0–15 or 16–19) that includes [port\_number]. If you omit [port\_number], ports 0–15 are displayed. Type "q" and press the Enter key to stop the display.

The following is an example of the Show Perf command:

SANbox #> show perf

Port	Bytes/s	Bytes/s	Bytes/s	Frames/s	Frames/s	Frames/s
Numk	per (in)	(out)	(total)	(in)	(out)	(total)
0	7K	136M	136M	245	68K	68K
1	58K	0	58K	1K	0	1K
2	0	0	0	0	0	0
3	0	0	0	0	0	0
4	0	0	0	0	0	0
5	0	0	0	0	0	0
6	0	7K	7K	0	245	245
7	136M	58K	136M	68K	1K	70K
8	7K	136M	136M	245	68K	68K
9	58K	0	58K	1K	0	1K
10	0	0	0	0	0	0
11	0	0	0	0	0	0
12	0	0	0	0	0	0
13	0	0	0	0	0	0
14	0	7K	7K	0	245	245
15	136M	58K	136M	68K	1K	70K
16	47M	23K	47M	23K	726	24K
17	0	0	0	0	0	0
18	23K	47M	47M	726	23K	24K
19	0	0	0	0	0	0

59055-03 C



# The following is an example of the Show Perf Byte command:

SAN	box #	> sho	w per	f byt	е										
Dis	playi	ng by	tes/s	ec (t	otal)	• • •	(Press	s any k	ey to	stop	disp	lay)			
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
0	T	2	3	4	5	0	1	0	9	TO	ΤT	12	13	14	13
-	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	137	 м 58к	0	0	0	0	8K	137M
										0					
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	136	M 58K	0	0	0	0	8K	136M
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	135	M 58K	0	0	0	0	7K	135M
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	137	M 58K	0	0	0	0	8K	137M
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	136	M 58K	0	0	0	0	7K	136M
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	137	м 58к	0	0	0	0	8K	137M
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	136	м 58к	0	0	0	0	8K	136M
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	136	м 58к	0	0	0	0	7K	136M
q															

q



# **Show Setup Command**

Displays the current SNMP and system settings.

Authority	None	
Syntax	show setup mfg radius services snmp system	
Keywords	<b>mfg</b> Displays manufacturing	information about the switch.
	<b>radius</b> Displays RADIUS serve	r information.
	services Displays switch service	status information.
	<b>snmp</b> Displays the current SN	MP settings.
	<b>system</b> Displays the current sys	tem settings.
Examples	The following is an exar	nple of the Show Setup Mfg command:
-//		
_//4///2/0	SANbox #> show setup mfg	ipie er me einen einep imig einimanen
	·	
	SANbox #> show setup mfg Manufacturing Informat	ion
	SANbox #> show setup mfg Manufacturing Informat  BrandName	ion  QLogic
	SANbox #> show setup mfg Manufacturing Informat  BrandName BuildDate	ion  QLogic Unknown
	SANbox #> show setup mfg Manufacturing Informat  BrandName BuildDate PartNumber	ion  QLogic Unknown SANbox 5200 Series
	SANbox #> show setup mfg Manufacturing Informat  BrandName BuildDate PartNumber SerialNumber	ion  QLogic Unknown SANbox 5200 Series FAM0331000011
	SANbox #> show setup mfg Manufacturing Informat  BrandName BuildDate PartNumber SerialNumber LicensedPorts	ion QLogic Unknown SANbox 5200 Series FAM0331000011 20
	SANbox #> show setup mfg Manufacturing Informat  BrandName BuildDate PartNumber SerialNumber	ion  QLogic Unknown SANbox 5200 Series FAM0331000011
	SANbox #> show setup mfg Manufacturing Informat  BrandName BuildDate PartNumber SerialNumber LicensedPorts MACAddress	ion QLogic Unknown SANbox 5200 Series FAM0331000011 20 00:c0:dd:02:cc:17
	SANbox #> show setup mfg Manufacturing Informat  BrandName BuildDate PartNumber SerialNumber LicensedPorts MACAddress PlanarPartNumber	ion QLogic Unknown SANbox 5200 Series FAM0331000011 20 00:c0:dd:02:cc:17 Unknown
	SANbox #> show setup mfg Manufacturing Informat  BrandName BuildDate PartNumber SerialNumber LicensedPorts MACAddress PlanarPartNumber SwitchSymbolicName	ion  QLogic Unknown SANbox 5200 Series FAM0331000011 20 00:c0:dd:02:cc:17 Unknown SANbox 10:00:00:c0:dd:02:cc:16
	SANbox #> show setup mfg Manufacturing Informat  BrandName BuildDate PartNumber SerialNumber LicensedPorts MACAddress PlanarPartNumber SwitchSymbolicName SwitchWWN	ion  QLogic Unknown SANbox 5200 Series FAM0331000011 20 00:c0:dd:02:cc:17 Unknown SANbox 10:00:00:c0:dd:02:cc:16

# The following is an example of the Show Setup Services command:

SANbox #> show setup serv	ices
System Services	
TelnetEnabled	True
SSHEnabled	False
GUIMgmtEnabled	True
SSLMgmtEnabled	False
EmbeddedGUIEnabled	True
SNMPEnabled	True
NTPEnabled	True
CIMEnabled	True
FTPEnabled	True
ManagementServerEnabled	True

# The following is an example of the Show Setup RADIUS command:

SANbox #> show setup radius

#### Radius Information

	-
DeviceAuthOrder	RadiusLocal
UserAuthOrder	RadiusLocal
TotalServers	1
Server: 1	
ServerIPAddress	10.20.11.8
ServerUDPPort	1812
DeviceAuthServer	False
UserAuthServer	True
AccountingServer	False
Timeout	2
Retries	0
SignPackets	False
Secret	* * * * * * * *



# The following is an example of the Show Setup Snmp command:

SANbox #> show setup sn		
SNMP Information		
SNMPEnabled	True	
Contact	<syscontact undefined=""></syscontact>	
Location	N_107 System Test Lab	
Description	SANbox 5200 Series FC Switch	
TraplAddress	10.0.254	
TraplPort	162	
TraplSeverity	warning	
TraplVersion	2	
TraplEnabled	False	
Trap2Address	0.0.0.0	
Trap2Port	162	
Trap2Severity	warning	
Trap2Version	2	
Trap2Enabled	False	
Trap3Address	0.0.0	
Trap3Port	162	
Trap3Severity	warning	
Trap3Version	2	
Trap3Enabled	False	
Trap4Address	0.0.0	
Trap4Port	162	
Trap4Severity	warning	
Trap4Version	2	
Trap4Enabled	False	
Trap5Address	0.0.0	
Trap5Port	162	
Trap5Severity	warning	
Trap5Version	2	
Trap5Enabled	False	
ObjectID	1.3.6.1.4.1.1663.1.1.1.1.17	
AuthFailureTrap	True	
ProxyEnabled	True	

# The following is an example of the Show Setup System command:

SANbox #> show setup system

System Information

Eth0NetworkDiscovery	Static
Eth0NetworkAddress	10.20.11.32
Eth0NetworkMask	255.255.252.0
Eth0GatewayAddress	10.20.8.254
AdminTimeout	30
InactivityTimeout	0
LocalLogEnabled	True
RemoteLogEnabled	False
RemoteLogHostAddress	10.0.0.254
NTPClientEnabled	True
NTPServerAddress	51.68.85.102
EmbeddedGUIEnabled	True



# Shutdown Command

Terminates all data transfers on the switch at convenient points and closes the Telnet session. Always power cycle the switch after entering this command.

- Authority Admin session
- Syntax shutdown
- **Notes** Always use this command to perform an orderly shut down before removing power from the switch.

When the shutdown is complete, the Heartbeat LED is extinguished.

# Test Command

Tests ports using internal (SerDes level), external (transceiver), and online loopback tests. Internal and external tests require that the port be placed in diagnostic mode. Refer to the "Set Command" on page B-59 for information about changing the port administrative state. While the test is running, the remaining ports on the switch remain fully operational.

Authority Admin session

### Syntax test

port [port\_number] [test\_type] cancel status

### Keywords port [port\_number] [test\_type]

Tests the port given by [port\_number] using the test given by [test\_type]. If you omit [test\_type], Internal is used. [test\_type] can have the following values:

### internal

Tests the SerDes for all port speeds independent of the capabilities of the transceiver. This is the default. The port must be in diagnostics mode to perform this test.

**NOTE:** An internal test on a 10-Gbps port verifies that a complete path exists, but does not send a test frame.

### external

Tests both the SerDes and transceiver for all port speeds that are supported by the transceiver. The port must be in diagnostics mode to perform this test, and a loopback plug must be installed in the transceiver.

**NOTE:** An external test on a 10-Gbps port verifies that a complete path exists, but does not send a test frame.

### online

Tests communications between the port and its device node or device loop at the operating port speed. The port being tested must be online and connected to a remote device. The port passes if the test frame that was sent by the ASIC matches the frame that is received. This test does not disrupt communication on the port.

### cancel

Cancels the online test in progress.

### status

Displays the status of a test in progress, or if there is no test in progress, the status of the test that was executed last.

# **Examples** To run an internal or external port test, do the following:

1. To start an admin session, enter the following command and press the Enter key.

```
admin start
```

2. Place the port in Diagnostics mode, enter the following command (x = port number) and press the Enter key.

set port x state diagnostics

- 3. Choose the type of port loopback test to run:
  - To run an internal loopback test, enter the following:

test port x internal

To run an external loopback test, enter the following command. A loopback plug must be installed for this test to pass.

test port x external

- 4. A series of test parameters are displayed on the screen. Press the Enter key to accept each default parameter value, or type a new value for each parameter and press the Enter key. The TestLength parameter is the number of frames sent, the FrameSize (256 byte maximum in some cases) parameter is the number of bytes in each frame, and the DataPattern parameter is the pattern in the payload.
- 5. After the test type has been chosen and the command executed, a message on the screen will appear detailing the test results.
- 6. After the test is run, put the port back into online state by entering the following command (*x* = port number) and pressing the Enter key.

set port x state online

7. To verify port is back online, enter the following command and press the Enter key. The contents of the AdminState field should display be "Online".

show port x

The online loopback (node-to-node) test requires that port be online and connected to a remote device. To run the online loopback test, do the following:

1. To start an admin session, enter the following command and press the Enter key.

admin start

2. To run the online loopback test, enter the following command and press the Enter key.

```
test port x online
```

3. A series of test parameters are displayed on the screen. Press the Enter key to accept each default parameter value, or type a new value for each parameter and press the Enter key. The TestLength parameter is the number of frames sent, the FrameSize (256 byte maximum in some cases) parameter is the number of bytes in each frame, and the DataPattern parameter is the pattern in the payload. Before running the test, make sure that the device attached to the port can handle the test parameters.

SANbox (admin) #> test port x online

A list of attributes with formatting and current values will follow. Enter a new value or simply press the ENTER key to accept the default value. If you wish to terminate this process before reaching the end of the list press 'q' or 'Q' and the ENTER key to do so.

TestLength	(decimal value, 1-4294967295)	[100	]
FrameSize	(decimal value, 36-2148)	[256	]
DataPattern	(32-bit hex value or 'Default')	[Default	:]
StopOnError	(True/False)	[False	]
Do you want to	o start the test? $(y/n)$ [n]		

4. After all parameter values are defined, press the Y key to start the test. After the command executes, a message on the screen will appear detailing the test results.



# **Uptime Command**

Displays the elapsed up time since the switch was last reset and reset method. A hot reset or non-disruptive firmware activation does not reset the elapsed up time reported by this command.

Authority	None
Syntax	uptime
Examples	The following is an example of the Uptime command:
	SANbox #> uptime

Elapsed up time : 0 day(s), 2 hour(s), 28 min(s), 44 sec(s)
Reason last reset: NormalReset

# **User Command**

Administers and displays user accounts.

Authority Admin account name and an Admin session. The Accounts and List keywords are available to all account names without an Admin session.

### Syntax user

accounts add <u>del</u>ete [account\_name] edit list

### Keywords accounts

Displays all user accounts that exist on the switch. This keyword is available to all account names without an Admin session.

### add

Add a user account to the switch. You will be prompted for an account name, a password, authority, and an expiration date.

- A switch can have a maximum of 15 user accounts.
- Account names are limited to 15 characters; passwords must be 8–20 characters.
- Admin authority grants permission to use the Admin command to open an admin session, from which all commands can be entered. Without Admin authority, you are limited to view-only commands.
- The expiration date is expressed in the number of days until the account expires (2000 maximum). The switch will issue an expiration alarm every day for seven days prior to expiration. 0 (zero) specifies that the account has no expiration date.

### delete [account\_name]

Deletes the account name given by [account\_name] from the switch.

### edit

Initiates an edit session that prompts you for the account name for which to change the expiration date and authority.

## list

Displays the list of users currently logged in and their session numbers. Provides the same function as the Show Users command. This keyword is available to all account names without an Admin session.

**Notes** Authority level or password changes that you make to an account that is currently logged in do not take effect until that account logs in again.

#### **Examples** The following is an example of the User Accounts command:

SANbox (admin) #> user accounts

Current list of user accounts				
images	(admin authority = False, never expires)			
admin	(admin authority = True , never expires)			
chuckca	(admin authority = False, expires in < 50 days)			
gregj	(admin authority = True , expires in < 100 days)			
fred	(admin authority = True , never expires)			

The following is an example of the User Add command:

SANbox (admin) #> user add

```
Press 'q' and the ENTER key to abort this command.
account name (1-15 chars) : user1
account password (8-20 chars) : *******
```

please confirm account password: \*\*\*\*\*\*

set account expiration in days (0-2000, 0=never): [0] 100

should this account have admin authority? (y/n): [n] y

OK to add user account 'user1' with admin authority and to expire in 100 days?

```
Please confirm (y/n): [n] y
```

### The following is an example of the User Edit command:

```
SB211.192 (admin) #> user edit
```

 $\ensuremath{\texttt{Press}}$  'q' and the  $\ensuremath{\texttt{ENTER}}$  key to abort this command.

```
account name (1-15 chars) : user1
set account expiration in days (0-2000, 0=never): [0]
should this account have admin authority? (y/n): [n]
```

OK to modify user account 'userl' with no admin authority and to expire in 0 days?

```
Please confirm (y/n): [n]
```

# The following is an example of the User Delete command:

SANbox (admin) #> user del user3

The user account will be deleted. Please confirm (y/n): [n]  $\boldsymbol{y}$ 

### The following is an example of the User List command:

SANbox (admin) #> user list

User	Ethernet Addr-Port	Logged in Since
admin@OB-session1	10.20.68.108-1031	day month date time year
admin@OB-session2	10.20.68.108-1034	day month date time year
snmp@OB-session3	Unknown	day month date time year
snmp@IB-session4	Unknown	day month date time year
admin@OB-session5	Unknown	day month date time year



# Whoami Command

Displays the account name, session number, and switch domain ID for the Telnet session.

Authority None

Syntax whoami

**Examples** The following is an example of the Whoami command:

SANbox #> whoami

User name : admin@session2 Switch name : SANbox Switch domain ID: 21 (0x15)

# **Zone Command**

Manages zones and zone membership on a switch.

Authority Admin session and a Zoning Edit session. Refer to the "Zoning Command" on page B-134 for information about starting a Zoning Edit session. The List, Members, and Zonesets keywords are available without an Admin session.

Syntax zone

add [zone] [member\_list] copy [zone\_source] [zone\_destination] create [zone] delete [zone] list members [zone] remove [zone] [member\_list] rename [zone\_old [zone\_new] type [zone] [zone\_type] zonesets [zone]

## Keywords add [zone] [member\_list]

Specifies one or more ports/devices given by [members] to add to the zone named [zone]. Use a <space> to delimit aliases and ports/devices in [member\_list]. A zone can have a maximum of 2000 members. [member\_list] can have any of the following formats:

- Domain ID and port number pair (Domain ID, Port Number). Domain IDs can be 1–-239; port numbers can be 0–-255.
- 6-character hexadecimal device Fibre Channel address (hex)
- 16-character hexadecimal worldwide port name (WWPN) with the format xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx.
- Alias name

The application verifies that the [members] format is correct, but does not validate that such a member exists.

## copy [zone\_source] [zone\_destination]

Creates a new zone named [zone\_destination] and copies the membership into it from the zone given by [zone\_source].

## create [zone]

Creates a zone with the name given by [zone]. An zone name must begin with a letter and be no longer than 64 characters. Valid characters are 0-9, A-Z, a-z, \_, \$, ^, and -. The zoning database supports a maximum of 2000 zones.

## delete [zone]

Deletes the specified zone given by [zone] from the zoning database. If the zone is a component of the active zone set, the zone will not be removed from the active zone set until the active zone set is deactivated.



# list

Displays a list of all zones and the zone sets of which they are components. This keyword does not require an Admin session.

# members [zone]

Displays all members of the zone given by [zone]. This keyword does not require an Admin session.

# remove [zone] [member\_list]

Removes the ports/devices given by [member\_list] from the zone given by [zone]. Use a <space> to delimit aliases and ports/devices in [member\_list]. [member\_list] can have any of the following formats:

- Domain ID and port number pair (Domain ID, Port Number). Domain IDs can be 1--239; port numbers can be 0--255.
- 6-character hexadecimal device Fibre Channel address (hex)
- 16-character hexadecimal worldwide port name (WWPN) with the format xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx.
- Alias name

# rename [zone\_old] [zone\_new]

Renames the zone given by [zone\_old] to the zone given by [zone\_new].

# type [zone] [zone\_type]

Specifies the zone type given by [zone\_type] to be assigned to the zone name given by [zone]. If you omit the [zone\_type], the system displays the zone type for the zone given by [zone]. [zone\_type] can be one of the following:

soft - name server zone

hardACL – Access control list hard zone. This keyword is case sensitive.

## zonesets [zone]

Displays all zone sets of which the zone given by [zone] is a component. This keyword does not require an Admin session.

# **Examples** The following is an example of the Zone List command:

```
SANbox #> zone list
 Zone
            ZoneSet
  _____
 wwn_b0241f
             zone_set_1
 wwn_23bd31
             zone_set_1
 wwn_221416
             zone_set_1
 wwn_2215c3
             zone_set_1
 wwn_0160ed
             zone_set_1
 wwn_c001b0
             zone_set_1
 wwn_401248
             zone_set_1
 wwn_02402f
             zone_set_1
 wwn_22412f
             zone_set_1
The following is an example of the Zone Members command:
SANbox #> zone members wwn_b0241f
```

```
Current List of Members for Zone: wwn_b0241f
------
50:06:04:82:bf:d2:18:c2
50:06:04:82:bf:d2:18:d2
21:00:00:e0:8b:02:41:2f
```



# The following is an example of the Zone Zonesets command:

```
Current List of ZoneSets for Zone: zonel
------
zone_set_1
```

SANbox #> zone zonesets zone1

# **Zoneset Command**

Manages zone sets and component zones across the fabric.

Authority Admin session and a Zoning Edit session. Refer to the "Zoning Command" on page B-134 for information about starting a Zoning Edit session. The Active, List, and Zones keywords are available without an Admin session. You must close the Zoning Edit session before using the Activate and Deactivate keywords.

# Syntax zoneset

activate [zone\_set] active add [zone\_set] [zone\_list] copy [zone\_set\_source] [zone\_set\_destination] create [zone\_set] deactivate delete [zone\_set] list remove [zone\_set] [zone\_list] rename [zone\_set\_old] [zone\_set\_new] zones [zone\_set]

# Keywords <u>activate</u> [zone\_set]

Activates the zone set given by [zone\_set]. This keyword deactivates the active zone set. Close the Zoning Edit session before using this keyword.

### active

Displays the name of the active zone set. This keyword does not require Admin session.

## add [zone\_set] [zone\_list]

Adds a list of zones and aliases given by [zone\_list] to the zone set given by [zone\_set]. Use a <space> to delimit zone and alias names in [zone\_list].

## copy [zone\_set\_source] [zone\_set\_destination]

Creates a new zone set named [zone\_set\_destination] and copies into it the zones from the zone set given by [zone\_set\_source].

### create [zone\_set]

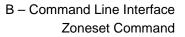
Creates the zone set with the name given by [zone\_set]. A zone set name must begin with a letter and be no longer than 64 characters. Valid characters are 0-9, A-Z, a-z, \_, \$, ^, and -. The zoning database supports a maximum of 256 zone sets.

### deactivate

Deactivates the active zone set. Close the Zoning Edit session before using this keyword.

### delete [zone\_set]

Deletes the zone set given by [zone\_set]. If the specified zone set is active, the command is suspended until the zone set is deactivated.



#### list

Displays a list of all zone sets. This keyword does not require an Admin session.

#### remove [zone\_set] [zone\_list]

Removes a list of zones given by [zone\_list] from the zone set given by [zone\_set]. Use a <space> to delimit zone names in [zone\_list]. If [zone\_set] is the active zone set, the zone will not be removed until the zone set has been deactivated.

#### rename [zone\_set\_old] [zone\_set\_new]

Renames the zone set given by [zone\_set\_old] to the name given by [zone\_set\_new]. You can rename the active zone set.

#### zones [zone\_set]

Displays all zones that are components of the zone set given by [zone\_set]. This keyword does not require an Admin session.

- A zone set must be active for its definitions to be applied to the fabric.
- Only one zone set can be active at one time.
- A zone can be a component of more than one zone set.

**Examples** The following is an example of the Zoneset Active command:

SANbox #> zoneset active

ActiveZoneSet Bets LastActivatedBy admin@OB-session6 LastActivatedOn day month date time year

#### The following is an example of the Zoneset List command:

```
SANbox #> zoneset list
```

```
Current List of ZoneSets
------
alpha
beta
```

The following is an example of the Zoneset Zones command:

SANbox #> zoneset zones ssss

```
Current List of Zones for ZoneSet: ssss
------
zonel
zone2
zone3
```

Notes

# **Zoning Command**

Opens a Zoning Edit session in which to create and manage zone sets and zones. Refer to the "Zone Command" on page B-128 and the "Zoneset Command" on page B-132.

**Authority** Admin session except for the Active, History, Limits, and List keywords. The Clear keyword also requires a zoning edit session.

# Syntax zoning active cancel

clear edit history limits list restore save

# Keywords active

Displays information for the active zone set including component zones and zone members. This keyword does not require an Admin session.

# cancel

Closes the current Zoning Edit session. Any unsaved changes are lost.

#### clear

Clears all inactive zone sets from the volatile edit copy of the zoning database. This keyword requires a zoning edit session. This keyword does not affect the non-volatile zoning database. However, if you enter the Zoning Clear command followed by the Zoning Save command, the non-volatile zoning database will be cleared from the switch.

**NOTE:** The preferred method for clearing the zoning database from the switch is the Reset Zoning command.

# edit

Opens a Zoning Edit session.



# history

Displays a history of zoning modifications. This keyword does not require an Admin session. History information includes the following:

- Time of the most recent zone set activation or deactivation and the user who performed it
- Time of the most recent modifications to the zoning database and the user who made them.
- Checksum for the zoning database

# limits

Displays the number of zone sets, zones, aliases, members per zone, members per alias, and total members in the zoning database. This keyword also displays the switch zoning database limits, excluding the active zone set, which are described in Table B-29. This keyword does not require an Admin session.

Limit	Description	
MaxZoneSets	Maximum number of zone sets (256)	
MaxZones	Maximum number of zones (2000)	
MaxAliases	Maximum number of aliases (2500)	
MaxTotalMembers	Maximum number of zone and alias members (10000) that can be stored in the switch's zoning database.	
MaxZonesInZoneSets	Maximum number of zones that are components of zone sets (2000), excluding those in the orphan zone set, that can be stored in the switch's zoning database. Each instance of a zone in a zone set counts toward this maximum.	
MaxMembersPerZone	Maximum number of members in a zone (2000)	
MaxMembersPerAlias	Maximum number of members in an alias (2000)	

Table B-29	Zoning	Database	Limits

# list

Lists all zoning definitions. This keyword does not require an Admin session.

# restore

Reverts the changes to the zoning database that have been made during the current Zoning Edit session since the last Zoning Save command was entered.

# save

Saves changes made during the current Zoning Edit session. The system informs you that the zone set must be activated to implement any changes. This does not apply if you entered the Zoning Clear command during the Zoning Edit session.

# **Examples** The following is an example of the Zoning Edit command:

```
SANbox #> admin start
SANbox (admin) #> zoning edit
SANbox (admin-zoning) #>
.
.
SANbox (admin-zoning) #> zoning cancel
Zoning edit mode will be canceled. Please confirm (y/n): [n] y
SANbox (admin) #> admin end
```

#### The following is an example of the Zoning Limits command:

SANbox #> zoning limits

Zoning Attribute			[Zoning Name]
MaxZoneSets	256	6	
MaxZones	2000		
MaxAliases	2500		
MaxTotalMembers			
MaxZonesInZoneSets		19	
MaxMembersPerZone		10	
	2000	10	D_1_JBOD_1
		23	D_1_Photons
		9	D_2_JBOD1
		16	D_2_NewJBOD_2
		5	E1JBOD1
		5	E2JBOD2
		3	LinkResetZone
		3	LinkResetZone2
		8	NewJB0D1
		8	NewJBOD2
		24	Q_1Photon1
		8	Q_1_NewJBOD1
		13	Q_1_Photon_1
		21	Q_2_NewJBOD2
		3	ZoneAlias
		3	ZoneDomainPort
		4	ZoneFCAddr
MaxMembersPerAlias	2000		
		2	AliasInAZone

```
The following is an example of the Zoning List command:
SANbox #> zoning list
 Active ZoneSet Information
  ZoneSet
            Zone
                      ZoneMember
  -----
  wwn
             wwn_b0241f
                      50:06:04:82:bf:d2:18:c2
                      50:06:04:82:bf:d2:18:d2
                      21:00:00:e0:8b:02:41:2f
             wwn_23bd31
                      50:06:04:82:bf:d2:18:c2
                      50:06:04:82:bf:d2:18:d2
                      10:00:00:c9:23:bd:31
             wwn_221416
                      50:06:04:82:bf:d2:18:c2
                      50:06:04:82:bf:d2:18:d2
                      10:00:00:00:c9:22:14:16
             wwn_2215c3
                      50:06:04:82:bf:d2:18:c2
                      50:06:04:82:bf:d2:18:d2
                      10:00:00:c9:22:15:c3
 Configured Zoning Information
  ZoneSet
             Zone
                      ZoneMember
  -----
  wwn
             wwn_b0241f
                      50:06:04:82:bf:d2:18:c2
                      50:06:04:82:bf:d2:18:d2
                      21:00:00:e0:8b:02:41:2f
             wwn_23bd31
                      50:06:04:82:bf:d2:18:c2
                      50:06:04:82:bf:d2:18:d2
                      10:00:00:c9:23:bd:31
             wwn_221416
                      50:06:04:82:bf:d2:18:c2
                      50:06:04:82:bf:d2:18:d2
                      10:00:00:c9:22:14:16
             wwn_2215c3
                      50:06:04:82:bf:d2:18:c2
                      50:06:04:82:bf:d2:18:d2
                      10:00:00:c9:22:15:
```



Notes

# Glossary

# Access Control List Zone

Access Control List zoning divides the fabric for purposes of controlling discovery and inbound traffic.

# Active Zone Set

The zone set that defines the current zoning for the fabric.

# Active Firmware

The firmware image on the switch that is in use.

# Activity LED

A port LED that indicates when frames are entering or leaving the port.

# Administrative State

State that determines the operating state of the port, I/O blade, or switch. The configured administrative state is stored in the switch configuration. The configured administrative state can be temporarily overridden using the command line interface.

# Alarm

A message generated by the switch that specifically requests attention. Alarms are generated by several switch processes. Some alarms can be configured.

# Alias

A named set of ports or devices. An alias is not a zone, and can not have a zone or another alias as a member.

# AL\_PA

Arbitrated Loop Physical Address

# **Arbitrated Loop**

A Fibre Channel topology where ports use arbitration to establish a point-to-point circuit.

# Arbitrated Loop Physical Address (AL\_PA)

A unique one-byte value assigned during loop initialization to each NL\_Port on a loop.

# ASIC

Application Specific Integrated Circuit. A chip designed for a specific applications, such as a transmission protocol or a computer.

# **Auto Save**

Zoning parameter that determines whether changes to the active zone set that a switch receives from other switches in the fabric will be saved to permanent memory on that switch.

# BootP

Boot Strap Protocol. A type of network server.

# **Buffer Credit**

A measure of port buffer capacity equal to one frame.

# **Cascade Topology**

A fabric in which the switches are connected in series. If you connect the last switch back to the first switch, you create a cascade-with-a-loop topology. A service which multiplexes frames at frame boundaries to or from one or more N\_Ports wit h acknowledgment provided.

# **Chassis Hop**

A measure of fabric latency represented by the ISL that any frame crosses when travelling from one switch to another. A frame that travels from one switch to another over an ISL experiences one chassis hop.

# **Class 3 Service**

A service which multiplexes frames at frame boundaries to or from one or more N\_Ports without acknowledgment.

# **Configured Zone Sets**

The zone sets stored on a switch excluding the active zone set.

### **Default Visibility**

Zoning parameter that determines the level of communication among ports/devices when there is no active zone set.

# **Device Security**

A component of fabric security that provides for the authorization and authentication of devices that attach to a switch through the use of groups and security sets.

# **Domain ID**

User defined number that identifies the switch in the fabric.

# **Event Log**

Log of messages describing events that occur in the fabric.

#### **Expansion Port**

E\_Port that connects to another FC-SW-2 compliant switch.

#### **Fabric Database**

The set of fabrics that have been opened during a SANsurfer Switch Manager session.

#### Fabric Device Management Interface

An interface by which device host bus adapters can be managed through the fabric.

#### **Fabric Management Switch**

The switch through which the fabric is managed.

#### **Fabric Name**

User defined name associated with the file that contains user list data for the fabric.

# Fabric Port

An F\_Port or FL\_Port.

#### **Fabric Security**

The functions that provide security for fabric users and devices including user account security, and fabric services.

#### **Fabric Services**

A component of fabric security that provides for the control of inband management and SNMP on a switch.

#### **Fabric View File**

A file containing a set of fabrics that were opened and saved during a previous SANsurfer Switch Manager session.

#### FDMI

See Fabric Device Management Interface.



# Flash Memory

Memory on the switch that contains the chassis control firmware.

#### Frame

Data unit consisting of a start-of-frame (SOF) delimiter, header, data payload, CRC, and an end-of-frame (EOF) delimiter.

# FRU

Field Replaceable Unit

### Group

A list of device worldwide names that are authorized to attach to a switch. There are three group types: one for other switches (ISL), another for devices (port), and a third for devices issuing management server commands (MS).

# Heartbeat LED

A chassis LED that indicates the status of the internal switch processor and the results of the Power-On Self-Test.

#### **Inactive Firmware**

The firmware image on the switch that is not in use.

#### **Inband Management**

The ability to manage a switch through another switch over an inter-switch link.

#### Initiator

The device that initiates a data exchange with a target device.

# In-Order-Delivery

A feature that requires that frames be received in the same order in which they were sent.

#### Input Power LED

A chassis LED that indicates that the switch logic circuitry is receiving proper DC voltages.

#### Inter-Switch Link

The connection between two switches using E\_Ports.

#### IP

Internet Protocol

# LIP

Loop Initialization Primitive sequence

#### Logged-In LED

A port LED that indicates device login or loop initialization status.

#### **Maintenance Button**

Formerly known as the Force PROM button. Momentary button on the switch used to reset the switch or place the switch in maintenance mode.

#### **Maintenance Mode**

Formerly known as force PROM mode. Maintenance mode sets the IP address to 10.0.0.1 and provides access to the switch for maintenance purposes.

#### **Management Information Base**

A set of guidelines and definitions for SNMP functions.

#### **Management Workstation**

PC workstation that manages the fabric through the fabric management switch.

# **Mesh Topology**

A fabric in which each chassis has at least one port directly connected to each other chassis in the fabric. Management Information Base

# Multistage Topology

A fabric in which two or more edge switches connect to one or more core switches.

# **Network Time Protocol**

A network protocol that enables a client to synchronize its time with a server.

# NL\_Port

Node Loop Port. A Fibre Channel device port that supports arbitrated loop protocol.

# N\_Port

Node Port. A Fibre Channel device port in a point-to-point or fabric connection.

# NTP

Network Time Protocol

# **Pending Firmware**

The firmware image that will be activated upon the next switch reset.

# POST

Power-On Self Test

# **Power-On Self Test**

Diagnostics that the switch chassis performs at start up.

# **Principal Switch**

The switch in the fabric that manages domain ID assignments.

# SANsurfer Switch Manager

Switch management application.

### Simple Network Management Protocol

An application protocol that manages and monitors network communications and functions. It also controls the Management Information Base (MIB).

### **Security Set**

A set of up to three groups with no more than one of each group type: ISL, Port, or MS. The active security set defines the device security for a switch.

#### SFP

Small Form-Factor Pluggable.

# **Small Form-Factor Pluggable**

A transceiver device, smaller than a GigaBit Interface Converter, that plugs into the Fibre Channel port.

#### SNMP

Simple Network Management Protocol

#### Soft Zone

Soft zoning divides the fabric for purposes of controlling discovery. Members of the same soft zone automatically discover and communicate freely with all other members of the same zone.

# Target

A storage device that responds to an initiator device.

#### **User Account**

An object stored on a switch that consists of an account name, password, authority level, and expiration date.



# **User Account Security**

A component of fabric security that provides for the administration and authentication of account names, passwords, expiration dates, and authority level.

# VCCI

Voluntary Control Council for Interference

# **Voluntary Control Council for Interference**

A consortium of Japanese electronics industry associations that have established voluntary standards for controlling electromagnetic interference (EMI).

#### Worldwide Name (WWN)

A unique 64-bit address assigned to a device by the device manufacturer.

#### WWN

Worldwide Name

# XPAK

A specification authored by a consortium of companies to govern the development of small form factor 10 Gigabit modules.

#### Zone

A set of ports or devices grouped together to control the exchange of information.

# Zone Set

A set of zones grouped together. The active zone set defines the zoning for a fabric.

# **Zoning Database**

The set of zone sets, zones, and aliases stored on a switch.



Notes

# Index

# **Numerics**

10/100 Base-T straight cable 4-8 10-Gbps port 2-5

# A

Access Control List zone 3-3 account name display B-124, B-127 factory B-2 ftp 5-5 maintenance mode 5-12 Activity LED 2-6, 2-8 Admin account name B-7 authority B-7 Admin command B-8 Admin session timeout B-85 administrative state port B-79 switch B-60 air flow A-4 alarm configuration B-67 configuration defaults B-49 configuration display B-105 description B-77 log B-59, B-91 alias add members B-9 copy B-9 create B-9 delete B-9 delete members B-10 display list B-9 display members B-10 rename B-10 Alias command B-9 altitude A-4

Arbitrated Loop Physical Address B-78 authentication B-27 authority B-7 authorization 3-16

# В

bandwidth 3-5, A-2 beacon B-59 binding B-26, B-30 boot loader 5-15 broadcast B-91 browser 4-1 buffer credit 3-4, A-2

# С

cable 10/100 Base-T 4-8 10/100 Base-T crossover 4-8 fibre optic 3-1 null modem F/F DB9 4-8 XPAK switch stacking 4-7 cascade topology 3-10 certificate 3-15, B-19 CHAP authentication B-27 chassis air flow A-4 diagnostics 5-1 LEDs 2-4 marking A-5 shock A-4 status B-91 vibration A-4 CIM command B-11 CIMListener command B-12 CIMSubscription command B-14 classes of service A-1 command line interface 2-12, B-1 command syntax B-6 commands B-7 Common Information Model configure B-11 display listener B-91 display subscription B-91 listener B-12 service 3-14, B-83 subscription B-14 Config command B-16 configuration activate B-16 backup B-16 copy B-16 delete B-16 edit B-16 file 5-5 file system error 2-3, 5-4, 5-6 list B-16 remove 5-14 reset B-45 restore B-17 restore default 5-14 save B-17 connection Secure Socket Layer B-19 security B-82 controls 2-2 Create command B-19 credits 3-4. A-2 critical error 5-3

# D

Date command B-22 defaults alarm configuration B-49 port configuration B-48 RADIUS configuration B-50 security configuration B-52 services configuration B-51 Simple Network Management Protocol configuration B-50

switch configuration B-47 system configuration B-51 zoning configuration B-49 device access 3-2 authentication 3-16 authorization 3-16 cabling 4-25 description 3-1 performance 3-6 security 3-16 security example 3-17 diagnostics 5-1, 5-3, A-3 dimensions A-3 disk space 4-1 distance 3-4 domain ID binding B-26, B-30 conflict 5-8 description 3-7 display B-91 lock 3-7 donor port 3-4, B-91

# Ε

E Port 2-7, 5-8 emissions standards A-5 environmental conditions 4-2 specifications A-4 Ethernet direct connection 4-8 indirect connection 4-8 port 2-8 event logging by component B-74, B-109 by port B-76, B-110 by severity level B-110 display B-109 restore defaults B-76 save settings B-76 settings B-110



severity level B-76 start B-76 stop B-76 extended credits 3-4 external test B-120

# F

F Port 2-7 fabric management 3-27, A-3 management switch 2-8 management workstation 4-1 point-to-point bandwidth A-2 port 2-7 security 3-14 Fabric Device Management Interface B-91 factory defaults 5-14, B-45 Feature command B-23 fiber optic cable 3-1 Fibre Channel ports 2-5 protocols A-1 Field Replaceable Unit 6-1, A-3 File Transfer Protocol description 2-12 example 5-5, B-38 service 3-14, B-83 firmware failure 5-4 image file B-37 install with CLI 4-27, B-24 install with SANsurfer Switch Manager 4-26 list image files B-37 non-disruptive activation 4-25, B-36 remove image files B-37 retrieve image file B-37 unpack image 5-13, B-37 version B-97 Firmware Install command B-24 FL Port 2-7 flash memory 2-3 four-switch stacking 3-9

frame size A-2 FRU - See Field Replaceable Unit FTP - See File Transfer Protocol

# G

G Port 2-7 gateway address B-85 GBIC - See GigaBit Interface Converter generic ports 2-7 **Gigabit Interface Converter 3-1** GL Port 2-7 group add member B-26 copy B-28 create B-28 edit member attributes B-29 list B-30 list members B-30 Management Server B-28 remove member B-30 rename B-30 type B-28, B-30 Group command B-25

# Η

Hardreset command B-33 harmonics A-5 HBA - See Host Bus Adapter Heartbeat LED 2-4, 5-3 heat output A-4 Help command B-34 History command B-35 host authentication example 3-24 host bus adapter 3-1, B-91 Hotreset command B-36 humidity 4-2, A-4 HyperTerminal application 4-10

# I

I/O Stream Guard B-64 Image command B-37 immunity A-5 inband management 3-13 indication service listener B-12 Input Power LED 5-2 installation 4-2 internal firmware failure 5-4 test B-120 internet browser 4-1 IP address B-85 ISL group B-28

# L

latency 3-5, A-2 LED Activity 2-6, 2-8 Heartbeat 2-4, 5-3 Input Power 2-4, 5-2 Link Status 2-8 Logged-In 2-6, 5-7 power supply 2-10 System Fault 2-5, 5-2 license key 2-5, 3-6, 4-28, B-23 Link control frame preference routing B-63 link state database B-92 Link Status LED 2-8 Lip command B-40 listener add B-12 Common Information Model B-91 create B-12 delete B-12 log archive B-74 clear B-74 copy 5-14 display B-75, B-110 event B-74, B-109

local B-86 power-on self test B-95 remote B-86 logged in users B-97 Logged-In LED 2-6, 5-7 login limit 3-27, B-2 loop port bypass B-78 enable B-78 initialization B-40

# Μ

maintainability A-3 maintenance exit 5-13 interface A-3 menu 5-13 mode 2-3, 5-3, 5-12 Maintenance button 2-2, 2-3, 5-12 management application 4-11 workstation 2-8, 4-8 Management Server group B-28 service 3-14, B-83 manufacturer information B-115 marking A-5 mask address B-85 MD5 authentication B-27 media type A-2 memory activity B-92 flash 2-3 workstation 4-1 mesh topology 3-11 minicom 4-10 Multi-Frame Sequence bundling B-63 multiple chassis fabrics 3-6 Multistage topology 3-12

# QLOGIC<sup>®</sup>

# Ν

name server display B-92 zone 3-3 network configuration reset B-46 discovery B-85 gateway address B-85 interfaces B-91 IP address B-85 mask B-85 Network Time Protocol client B-86 interaction with Date command B-22 server address B-86 service 3-14. B-83 new features 1-2 non-critical error 5-3 non-disruptive activation 4-25, B-36 NTP - See Network Time Protocol null modem F/F DB9 cable 4-8

# 0

operating systems 4-1 over temperature 5-6

# Ρ

page break B-60 Passwd command B-41 password change B-41 factory B-2 file reset 5-14 maintenance mode 5-12 restore default 5-14 switch B-41 performance device 3-6 switch 3-4 tuning B-63

Ping command B-42 planning 3-1 port 10-Gbps 2-5 administrative state B-79 buffer credits 3-4 characteristics A-1 configuration B-61 configuration defaults B-48 configuration display B-105 counters B-78 diagnostics 5-7 Ethernet 2-8 external test B-120 fabric 2-7 Fibre Channel 2-5 generic 2-7 group B-28 initialize B-45 LEDs 2-6 loopback test B-120 maximum number of ports/users A-2 number of A-2 online test B-120 operational information B-93 performance B-92, B-112 performance tuning B-63 serial 2-9 speed A-2, B-78 types 2-7, A-1 POST - See Power On Self Test power consumption A-4 requirements 4-2 source loading A-4 supply 2-10, 6-2 supply diagnostics 5-11 power on self test description 4-22, 5-3 log B-95 Power Supply Fault LED 2-10, 5-11 Power Supply Status LED 2-10, 5-11 principal priority 3-7

switch 3-7 processor 4-1 Ps command B-43

# Q

Quit command B-44

# R

rack mount 4-3, 4-5, 4-6 RADIUS - See Remote Dial-In User Service. **RADIUS** server authentication 3-26 configuration B-80 configuration display B-115 example 3-20 reset B-45 **RADIUS** server configuration defaults B-50 recovering a switch 5-12 **Registered State Change Notification B-64** regulatory certifications A-5 remake filesystem 5-14 Remote Dial-In User Service 3-16 remote loa enable B-86 host address B-86 removal/replacement 6-1 Reset command B-45 RS-232 port 2-9 rubber feet 4-2

# S

safety standards A-5 SANsurfer Management Suite Linux installation 4-15 Solaris installation 4-17 Windows installation 4-13 SANsurfer Switch Manager API 2-12

description 2-11 Linux install 4-12 Mac OS X install 4-12 Solaris install 4-12 start 4-18 web applet 2-11, B-83, B-86 Windows install 4-11 scalability A-2 secret B-27 Secure Shell description 3-15 service 3-13, B-82 Secure Socket Layer certificate B-19 service 3-13, B-82 switch time B-22 security certificate 3-15 configuration B-64 configuration defaults B-52 configuration display B-105 connection 3-15 database B-46 device 3-16 fabric 3-14 user account 3-26 Security command B-53 security database clear B-53 display B-54 display history B-54 limits 3-16, B-54 security edit session cancel B-53 initiate B-53 revert changes B-54 save changes B-54 security set activate B-57 add member group B-57 copy B-57 create B-57 deactivate B-57 delete B-58



delete member group B-58 display B-58 display active B-53, B-57 display members B-58 rename B-58 Securityset command B-57 serial port 2-9, 4-8, 4-10 service listener B-12 services configuration defaults B-51 Set command B-59 Set Config command B-61 Set Log command B-74 Set Port command B-78 Set Setup command B-80 SFP - See Small Form-Factor Pluggable SHA-1 authentication B-27 shock A-4 Show command B-90 Show Config command B-105 Show Log command B-109 Show Perf command B-112 Show Setup command B-115 Shutdown command B-119 Simple Network Management Protocol configuration B-84 configuration display B-115 defaults B-50 description 2-12 reset B-46 service 3-13, B-83 site requirements 4-1 small form-factor pluggable 2-7, 4-6, 6-2 SNMP See - Simple Network Management Protocol soft zone 3-3 SSH - See Secure Shell SSL - See Secure Socket Layer stacking 3-6, 3-8 steering B-95 subscription create B-14 delete B-14 display B-91 support file B-19

switch

administrative state B-60 configuration 4-23, B-64 configuration defaults B-47 configuration display B-105 hard reset B-33 log B-86 management 2-11 management service 3-13, B-82 manufacturer information B-115 operational information B-96 power up 4-22 recovery 5-12 reset 2-3, 5-15, B-123 reset without POST B-46 services 3-13, B-46, B-82, B-115 specifications A-1 upgrade 2-5, 3-6, 4-28 system error 5-4 processor A-2 system configuration change B-85 defaults B-51 display B-115 System Fault LED 2-5, 5-2

# Т

table mount 4-3 Telnet service 3-13, B-82 session timeout B-85 temperature error 5-6 operating range 4-2, A-4 Test command B-120 three-switch-stacking 3-8 time B-22 time zone B-60 timeout Admin session B-85 Telnet session B-85 value 5-9 topology cascade 3-10 mesh 3-11 Multistage 3-12 transceiver 2-7, 4-6, 6-2 transmission rate 3-4, 3-5 two-switch stacking 3-8

# U

upgrade 2-5, 3-6, 4-28, B-23 Uptime command B-123 user interface A-3 logged in B-97 user account add B-124 admin B-2 admin account B-2 delete B-124 display B-124 edit B-124 list B-124 security 3-26 User command B-124

# V

vibration A-4 Virtual Interface preference routing B-63 voltage fluctuations A-5 operating A-4

# W

web applet B-83 description 2-11 enable B-86 service 3-13 Whoami command B-127 workstation configuration 4-9 connect 4-8 IP address 4-9 requirements 4-1 worldwide name 3-2 WWN - See Worldwide Name

# Ζ

zone access control list 3-3 add member port B-128 conflict 5-9 copy B-128 create B-128 definition 3-2 delete B-128 delete member port B-129 list B-129 list members B-129 name server 3-3 rename B-129 type B-129 Zone command B-128 zone set activate B-132 active B-134 add member zone B-132 copy B-132 create B-132 deactivate B-46, B-132 definition 3-2 delete B-132 delete member zone B-133 display B-133 display active B-132 display members B-133 display zones B-129 rename B-133 Zoneset command B-132 zoning configuration B-68



configuration defaults B-49 configuration display B-105 database 3-2, B-46 edit B-134 history B-135 limits 3-2, B-135 list definitions B-135 revert changes B-135 save edits B-135 Zoning command B-134



Notes